

Karmic Astrology:

*Your Cosmic Apprentice
Guide*

By

Marilyn J. Muir

Karmic Astrology:

*Your Cosmic Apprentice
Guide*

**By
Marilyn J. Muir**

Published by: Marilyn J. Muir

©2022 Marilyn J. Muir



[This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/)

©2022 Marilyn J. Muir

www.marilynmuir.net

©2022 by Marilyn Muir. The material is copyrighted. All rights reserved. Copying for purposes of study is allowed. Copying for distribution of any audio and / or written material is prohibited. Your cooperation and discretion are appreciated.

My work is dedicated to my personal giants
upon whose shoulders I stand:

Margaret Baker, Teacher
Rev. Pearl Fernandez
Rev. Kathryn (Roz) Hall
Rev. Harriett Smiley
Rev. Kay Stillman
Rev. Pearl van Aalst

Thank you to the authors of numerous books and workshops who have helped me learn my craft.

Thank you to my students who helped me perfect my craft through workshops and living
examples,
and through hundreds of provocative questions.

Thank you to my children: Lyndy, Jim, Rob and Lauri who have become my greatest teachers
and who have gifted me with their spouses and their children
as my newest cadre of teachers.

Thank you to those who have encouraged, read, re-read, advised, edited
and otherwise assisted me in the production of this book:
To Lauri Muir-Viggiano, my daughter and my graphic artist;
To my amazing partners for this edition: Debra Sheahan and Kishore Kattamuri.

Karmic Astrology

Table of Contents

	Introduction	i
	Author's introduction / Learning methods	
Lesson 1	An Introduction to Karmic Astrology	1
	What is Karmic Astrology? Why this Karmic Series? Spirituality, Spiritual Guideposts	
Lesson 2	Individual Karmic Evolution Charts	25
	Natal Karmic Charting	
Lesson 3	Progressing the Karmic Chart	51
	Can the Karmic Chart be Progressed? Casting the Progressed Karmic Chart Prenatal Solar / Lunar Eclipses / Karmic Flip Other Points: Prenatal Solar and Lunar Eclipses, New and Full Moons, the North Node, the Composite Planet Point, Dark Moon Lilith	
Lesson 4	Karmic Relating	79
	What do we Bring to the Table? What do we Want for Ourselves? How about Karma? Soulmates and Twin Souls	
Lesson 5	Hierarchal Evolution	101
	The World's Karmic Charting, Galactic Astrology, The World Ages, Decanates, Dwads, Terms and Faces, Other Age Influences – Our Pole Star	
Lesson 6	Retrogrades and Reincarnation	129
	Heliocentric, Geocentric, Parallax, Perspective, Retrogrades and Stations of Inner and Outer Planets, Lunar Nodes, Karmic Implications	
Lesson 7	The Nodal Axis and Karma	153
	Nodes of the Moon and Planets, Geo- and Helio-centrally, Meaning of Nodes by Sign, House and Aspect, Synastry, Progressions, The Nodal Barrier	
Lesson 8	Karma and the Vertex	171
	What is the Vertex? How does it work in a chart? How do you apply and read it? Karma, Fate, Destiny	
Lesson 9	The Rays of Soul and Personality	191
	Evolution vs. Creationism, Numbers, The Seven Rays Light and Color, Gemstones, Musical / Astrological Equivalents	

Lesson 10	Inner Guide Meditation	215
	Introduction to Meditation, Introduction to Inner Guide Choice of Technique, Karmic Implications	
Appendix A	Learning Method #2: The Sorbonne Method	231
Appendix B	Further Study.....	233
Appendix C	Bibliography	237

©2022 by Marilyn Muir. The material is copyrighted. All rights reserved. Copying for purposes of study is allowed. Copying for distribution of any audio and / or written material is prohibited. Your cooperation and discretion are appreciated.

Introduction

Through your study of Karmic Astrology, you will become acquainted with me, my background, my mindset, and my motivations for writing this workbook. The following information should allow you to make informed choices as to the value to you gain from the material I am sharing. Essentially self-taught, over the years I have availed myself of courses, books, tapes, workshops, etc. whenever it was possible. I stand on the shoulders of giants, those seekers who have gone before me and who have given me a “leg-up” in terms of learning. There is no way to individually say thank you to all those faceless and nameless teachers, but I do honor their gift to me. I quote (and perhaps misquote) freely, but rarely remember whom I am quoting, as many sources have become lost in the barrage of learning.

I believe you should always evaluate any author or teacher with whom you choose to study because they will influence your mind – and therefore affect, or infect, your life. No author, reader or teacher can completely remove their own personalities from what they do or say unless they are entranced. Even when entranced, the channeling entity’s personalities and prejudices must enter into the material given. If general background information is not offered – ask. You do have the right to know the qualifications, the philosophic mindset, and the potential prejudices of those whom you allow into your mind. You do not have the right to private or personal information about anyone, and that includes your authors or teachers, your friends, family, or personal readings you may encounter in your studies.

Remember always to respect the privacy and the rights of others and to be discreet in any information you generate. You may not realize it now, but when in possession of personal information and trust, their lives can be an open book to a talented or gifted reader. Ethically, morally and karmically, “Do unto others what you would have them do unto you,” and “Do not unto others that which you would not want done to you.” The more modern saying, “What goes around, comes around”, especially applies in karmic circumstances. The more you work on evolving your consciousness, participating metaphysically, and developing your spiritual talents and skills, the more responsible you must be and act. You have to own what you generate or you may someday or in some lifetime be on the receiving end of a karmic backlash.

On a higher level of consciousness, you wrote your own script, which you probably do not remember doing, and you must assume total responsibility for it. While it is possible and probable to have guidance, I will approach experience as self-selected and purposeful. Remember too, the planning of an action is easier than the experience itself, especially when you are not consciously aware of the game plan. It is difficult at times to see how a small piece of experience fits into our life as a whole. In reading symbolically, we attempt to understand the purpose to our existence. This knowledge, along with positive use of your free will, can improve your experience.

At no time should any psychic, astrologer, teacher, counselor or reader negate your free will choices, or threaten, or try to intimidate you. Should this occur: run, don't walk, to the nearest exit! That person is on an ego trip, no matter how they present themselves. Spiritually motivated, metaphysical types, with or without physical bodies, will consistently try to empower you to make your own, hopefully better, personal choices. Walking in the light necessitates the right use of knowledge and skill. It's true that we do not always pull this off every moment of every day, but the motivation and the effort is clear – education and enlightenment, not interference or control. As a healer, I have encountered many instances where readers, counselors of all types, non-physical entities, chain-letters, etc. have used a variety of threats to control lives through fear of reprisal against the individual and their loved ones, or to coerce payment of money, multiple visits or referrals to others. While such referral to others might occur spontaneously, it never contains a threat – if spiritually motivated. Light workers do not threaten in any way, are quick to recognize threat, and do not feed any negativity implied.

Learning Methods

Over the years, I have encountered and adapted two methods of study which you may find helpful. I am sure there are many other methods of study just as useful and I would be happy to learn about methods you have encountered if you wish to share them with me. Method #1 is presented here for use with this course. Method #2 is presented in Appendix A as it requires a more detailed explanation.

Method # 1 There are several stages to learning. First, we have to access the information, grasp the principles involved, retain the material, and then apply the knowledge gained. Learning is completely individualized, as we are all unique in our skills. Primarily, we access information visually (sight), auditorily (hearing) and/or kinesthetically (by doing). Each of those methods has value, and each of us uses those methods individually or in various combinations, depending upon our unique personal skills. Perhaps I need to “see” what you are saying to grasp the principles and retain the knowledge. Perhaps I need to “hear”, or to “put my hands on it” or in some way participate to learn and retain. Retention of the material is critical to our use of it. Each of the access methods causes at least partial retention. Using a combination of those methods is what offers the highest percentage of retention and retention is the key to success.

Please use three-ring loose-leaf paper for sketching your ongoing notes. Spiral or hardbound notebooks are not flexible and will limit the use of such notes. Note that this workbook has wide margins and is structured for use in a loose-leaf, three-ring binder format affording you some flexibility for note-taking. Simply print a copy on 8 1/2 x 11 paper. Note that there are left- and right-hand pages. Look at your e-book to see the arrangement and punch the holes on the inside edge. Then, place the pages in a three-ring binder.

Once you have grasped each of the principles involved, please transfer your truncated permanent notes to 5 x 8 index cards, putting one principle only on a card. Please prepare one index card individually for each principle as suggested. You may make as many additional subject index cards as are useful to you in your studies. Make these principle cards as thorough as you can since we will use them extensively as the instruction progresses. This was key to my own learning process.

This book is a narrative with diagrams. If you choose, you may use your voice to record these lessons. Play your recording when you have the opportunity, both with and without the use of the narrative as you listen. Then create your own set of notes. It is important for you to study in this manner as it is auditory (your recording), visual (your narrative and diagrams), and kinesthetic (your handwritten notes and index cards). This combination offers you the best opportunity to retain what you have learned. Putting the information into your own words and noting your grasp of a principle is the key. With the recording and the narrative, you can study at your own pace, and review or re-listen as often as necessary.

Repetition is good for you. Any astrological study requires memorization of many principles. Recordings may be played while driving, cooking, relaxing, etc. to reinforce your understanding and your memory. Do not play meditation or relaxation recordings while driving a car or operating any equipment or machinery. The purpose of such tapes is to lull you into a receptive and relaxed state. Be sure you are in a safe position when they are played. Hopefully, this particular set of tapes will not be quieting, but instead will be stimulating.

Remember also that, as I am describing the various principles, try to get a “feel” for the energy. Allow your instincts and your emotions to get in on the learning process. You will understand and retain far more.

Method #2 is a more comprehensive study system with an involved explanation. As such, I have included it in Appendix A at the back of this book.

Take notes from your practice readings (your own and others). Your various notes could eventually become your or someone’s personal history. For these initial readings, temporarily keep a copy for yourself. Arrange to read for several people you know well and who are willing to give you feedback on the information you generate. People do love personal readings – especially free ones given while learning. Use those for practice along with your own personal readings. Do not work with negative people at this point in your studies. If you have a problem obtaining cooperation from family or friends, use famous people with accurate natal charts and good biographical material easily available. At this stage in your studies, ask those you read for to “take it with a grain of salt”. You must practice, but you must exercise caution in the material initially generated until it has proven itself to you. Once you have studied and practiced, you will develop trust in what you generate, and so will those for whom you read.

Throughout this course, I will promote self-understanding, self-help, and self-study. I truly believe that if you know who you are, why you are, where you are, what makes you tick, where your problem areas are, and what your assets are, you will know what you can do to help yourself.

I have to assume that you are going to do a great deal of work on your own. Each lesson is going to cover a specific subject and you will gradually build your knowledge into a full reading. I have taught myself by reading, and by applying what I have learned through trial and error. Surely if I can teach myself, you can learn it with the aid of a teacher.

While the intention for this course is to establish a thorough karmic astrology base for you, you must be aware that this workbook is only going to scratch the surface. I am not the only teacher. There are many more personal opinions other than mine presented here. You are embarking on an open-ended course of study in which there are no limits. You will always be a student, with all of human experience awaiting your examination and understanding. And so we begin...

{ v }

An Introduction to Karmic Astrology

What is Karmic Astrology?

Why this Karmic Series?

Spirituality

Spiritual Guideposts

What and Why? This class is a result of spiritual guidance received while in meditation and developed through live workshops and my reading practice. In each instance, credit is given to my sources and teachers who aided my understanding. Study of their material is encouraged. There have been so many teachers, books and workshops over the years that I may not recall a source. Please know I honor their contribution and freely extend them credit for their material. Should I leave someone out, please correct me using the publisher contact information.

Why should we study metaphysics, astrology, reincarnation, karma and (in particular) karmic astrology? It is man's continual search for meaning in his life that drives him from his purely mundane physical existence into increasing levels of subtlety and spiritual evolution. For the next few lessons, we will explore our growth patterns from the individual and collective karmic standpoints. Towards the end of the series we will turn inward using other methods, such as meditation, and other theories to deepen our understanding of the process.

All experience has purpose, even negative or unfulfilling experience. If life is purposeful, then all experience is purposeful even if we do not like it or understand it. Just as bad behavior in a child is frustrating, it does not mean the child is bad. Our perceptions color our definitions. If we tell the child he / she is bad, they will be defined internally by our perception and projection. If we tell the child we love them, but their behavior is not acceptable, they will learn acceptable behavior and their inner definition will be completely different. Many times we do not behave to our highest capabilities. We have eternity to learn and to progress. This material is one concept – mine. Hopefully it will contribute to your growth.

There is much controversy as to whether astrology and other metaphysical subjects are religiously taboo. I have studied this diligently, trying to determine my own path. I am a westerner and a self-classified Christian. Therefore, my lifetime study has been largely but not entirely of the Bible. At the end of this lesson, I will append a list of Bible quotations I have found to assist you should you be interested. For those of you not interested, just ignore the list. I am not trying to teach you religion. Frankly, I am not interested in playing by someone else's religious rules. I prefer spirituality. I study that which contributes to the evolution of humanity. Religion plays a great part in that evolution for the good, but at times to the detriment, of humanity. Using the western holy book, the Bible, as an example...

As a Spiritual Master, I personally am most interested in what Jesus had to say, assuming the reporting is accurate. I am less interested in what his disciples or various authors *thought* he meant by what he said. I prefer to determine his meaning myself. As you are aware, there are many translations, plus translations of translations, for the Bible, which to me offers broad avenues for misinterpretation. After a live presentation circa 1970 of language scholar George Lamsa's life study of translating the Old Testament from the original Aramaic directly into English and from the original Greek of the New Testament directly into English, I decided the Lamsa version of the Bible was the most accurate. Following are direct quotes from my personal preference - the Lamsa edition of the Bible.

In Matt 24:29-31 Jesus had been asked by his disciples what to look for at the times of the end. 29: "Immediately after the suffering of those days the sun will be darkened, the moon will not give its light and the stars will fall from the sky and the powers of the universe will be shaken. 30: Then the sign of the son of man will appear in the sky... 31: ...and they [*the angels*] will gather his chosen ones from the four winds [*directions?*] and from one end of the heaven to the other." In Luke 21:11 "...and there will be alarming sights, and great signs will appear from heaven. 25: And there will be signs in Sun and Moon and stars..." What I get from these few quotes is that we, as Astrologers, should look to the heavens, to the bodies, the signs, and the galactic influences. My take? I do not know why such references would be supplied if they were not valid. Astrologers look to the heavens!

When I first encountered astrology, I did not give it much credence. That was because, like so many others, I equated astrology with the newspaper or magazine columns I had read. There were many times when the astrologer seemed to be looking over my shoulder. At other times, the readings did not fit me at all. I sent for one of those older magazine reports

and got twenty pages of words that did not make much sense. A local Astrologer named Jeannie Kaye totally blew my mind by naming my only single deep, dark secret in about three minutes of looking at what I had thought to be a nonsensical report. Because of that experience in July of 1973, I started seriously studying the real stuff, not popular astrology.

Spirituality

There were few books or sources available to me, but *the stars guided me*, and books found their way into my hands. I devoured each book, going over and over them trying to grasp the astrological concepts and valuing the writer's contribution to my astrological understanding. At the time, I did not realize just how much of the writer's philosophical outlook was being incorporated as my own. Many years later, I decided to teach a class in Spiritual Astrology using one writer's book as a basis. You cannot imagine my surprise when I realized just how profoundly that writer had influenced my overall philosophical hypotheses and conclusions - not just astrologically, but philosophically. The purpose of that book was not karmic astrology. The message of the book was the spiritual essence and evolution of the individual using the astrological symbolism inherent in their chart.

When I started studying karma as a specific, I realized karma is about the spiritual essence and evolution of the individual, the Law of Cause and Effect experienced in human terms. The book and author who had such a profound effect on my thinking is *A Cosmic Science* by Isabel Hickey. Here are the direct quotes that have specifically shaped my astrological and philosophical thought. [*Any special emphasis is mine.*]

“We do not begin our livingness here;
and we do not finish our livingness here;
life is eternal.”

“The Soul is the unit of evolution.
The Personality is the unit of incarnation.
Your Personality is new, your Soul is not.
Become conscious of who you truly are:
a Soul using a Personality to function on this level.”

“Our earth place is a school of learning.
Experience is [*our*] teacher.
Knowledge is power.
Do you choose to be asleep in matter...
or awake and aware of the purpose and meaning to your life?”

“Man is not what he is because he was born when he was.
He was born when he was because...
he was potentially what he is.”

“It is not because you were born at a certain place or time
that you react to influences;
but the influence of that moment and that place in space
show your potentials that can be actualized in the future.”

“Astrology provides a blueprint to our character
and character is destiny.
But...don't forget you are spirit too.
Learn to be captain of your own ship.”

“The Personality is developed from Aries to Virgo.
The Soul is developed from Virgo to Pisces.”

“When we put our will into action,
we must abide by the result.”

I owe a deep debt of gratitude to Isabel Hickey and The Cosmic Doctrine. Let me show you where her teachings and astrology have taken *my* thoughts and beliefs. You are going to allow me to influence *your* thoughts and beliefs. Since I am the author of this work and your teacher, you should know where I am coming from.

“We do not begin our livingness here;
and we do not finish our livingness here;
life is eternal.”

The Creator and its universe are awesome (read: awe-struck, enormous, powerful, intelligent, creative, diverse, beyond definition). The Creator “has been, is now, and evermore shall be,” beginning-less and endless, ongoing, and eternal to our finite minds.

The Big Bang Scientists with their big bang theory say the universe exploded from a singularity 13.82 billion years ago, and is still expanding, causing the diversity we call our universe. Life is a circle. Along with that theory of expansion from a miniscule point, which contained all in potential, is the attending theory of entropy. When the universe runs out of steam from the Big Bang and cannot expand any further in a few more billion years, it will collapse back on itself (entropy) towards the originating singularity. This will act like a black hole, swallowing everything, allowing no matter or energy to escape its gravitational attraction.

Let us call the singularity God in all its potential,
the explosion the “Act of Creation,”
the expansion of the universe, evolution,
and entropy, the return to the source,
the black hole, the singularity (Creativity in potential).

This is the avenue I have explored over the years. There are alternative views of creation such as expansion to the point of oblivion, where everything created runs out of steam and just decays into nothingness. I do not care for that version because it implies an ending. The Universe wastes nothing. Matter turns into energy and energy turns into matter. Why would there be a purposeless and meaningless ending to the life of the Universe? Does that concept sound God-like?

As life expands, it evolves into more complex combinations, from that which was condensed towards that which is fully expressed, from simplicity to complexity. To me, it stands to reason that the return trip to the source should move away from complexity towards simplicity. This does not mean we will forget everything we learned, and will devolve and return to our primitive beginnings. It simply means that the universe has reached its intended potential and can now return home. Experience, having run its course, teaching us as we evolve, may return to its Source. Creation itself will experience at-one-ment (not atonement) with its Creator.

“Our Earth place is a school of learning.
Experience is [*our*] teacher.
Knowledge is power.
Do you choose to be asleep in matter...
or awake and aware of the purpose and meaning to your life?”

Purpose Do you want to be a random act of Creation, devoid of specific meaning or purpose, flotsam and jetsam on the sea of life, and possibly a victim? Or do you want to be a specific, a Creator’s child of Its created universe, unique, with a destiny, and having purposeful experience, fulfilling some ongoing personal and evolutionary growth? Man cannot serve two masters, nor can you serve two conflicting thoughts simultaneously. You either believe in randomness or chaos, with its attendant lack of purpose, or you believe in pattern and purpose. When

you study astrology, you go beyond the apparent randomness and unpredictability of Creation, to purposefulness and pattern of life. Although you can chalk up your experience to chance, reading the charts will convince you that random coincidence does not exist. There is the most amazing rhythm, both circular and spiral in nature, somewhat predictable depending on your skill, and most definitely observable. It's a subject worthy of study.



**Mother Earth:
our schoolhouse**

Earth is a very large schoolhouse. Think of the beautiful picture of the Earth that the astronauts photographed, a large swirling blue and white ball hanging in a black sky. Remember that the Sun would be behind the photographer, and the vastness of outer space behind the Earth. To complete your mental picture of Earth as a school, perch an old-fashioned red schoolhouse roof on one corner of the Earth. No one is perfect at this time - we are all students. The first clue that God is not finished with us is that we are wearing a body. If we had learned all that Earth has to teach us, or all that we are capable of learning in this physical experience, we would get to graduate and leave the shell. We call that death.

“The Soul is the unit of evolution.
The Personality is the unit of incarnation.
Your Personality is new, your Soul is not.
Become conscious of who you truly are:
a Soul using a Personality to function on this level.”

Spirit, Soul, Personality Most of the time, we think we own a Soul or a Spirit. We have that backwards! Our Spirit or our Soul owns this Personality (our physical self). Just as the glove is inert and lifeless without the hand that gives it shape and definition, so is our physical existence just a shell without our animating spirit. The Spirit of us “has been, is now, and evermore shall be”. The Spirit of us is the child of the Creator, “made in the image and likeness of”, with all the genetic inheritance of Creation at its disposal, a co-Creator with God! Embryonically God-like, with all the attributes of the Creator, it seeks its reflection in physical manifestation. It created this experience and probably uncountable others, and will continue to create once this brief physical sojourn has ended. Do you know what your Spirit body looks like? *I have seen it* in my aura studies. If you saw the movie “Cocoon” showing the aliens in their iridescent light bodies, that is what our Spirit self looks like, pure white scintillating light, amazing and fairly easy to see once you learn to see auras.

To my understanding, the Soul is our accumulated knowledge and experience, our karmic memory bank, a way-station between what we experience and the perfection of our Spirit selves. Spirit can only know perfection. Have you ever put a jigsaw puzzle together? I prefer large, difficult puzzles, and I try to do them as quickly as possible, trying to stretch myself. I put the border together first, then work on small sections. Progressing, I spot connecting pieces to these small sections, fitting them into an increasingly larger pattern, sort of mini-realizations. Think of this analogy of multiple physical experiences contributing to the growth and evolution of the Soul. I believe in the “Aha! Principle” of spiritual evolution. As the Soul accumulates the experience and its accompanying knowledge, a lightbulb flashes on and the Soul comprehends the whole picture in one burst of realization: Aha! At that point, the Soul will then be absorbed by the Spirit self: At-One-Ment!

“Man is not what he is because he was born when he was.
He was born when he was because...
he was potentially what he is.”

“It is not because you were born at a certain place or time
that you react to influences;
but the influences of that moment and that place in space
show your potentials that can be actualized in the future.”

Incarnation Let us look at purposeful. Your experience, past, present and future, serves a purpose in your growth and evolution. Starting as potential, needing to accumulate experience and (hopefully) knowledge, with the universe and eternity at your disposal, time and schoolhouses are abundant. How could you be born with a chart indicating various lessons, qualities both positive and negative, and genetic predisposition unless you have a past on some level? You have had prior experience. If you have been, then you are shaped by those experiences, good, bad, or incomplete. They have all contributed to what and who you are now. The experiences you are currently having also contribute to what you are now, as well as what you will be. If you continue to be, then the past and the present are leading somewhere. Do you suppose that the somewhere you are heading has any bearing on your current experience? Can the future shape the past and the present?

Great Karmic Board in the Sky? Your physical incarnation was not the result of a deity or cosmic group practicing on victims of karma. This experience is a natural conclusion to what you have done and been, and is a prelude to what you will be. Karma is simply the Law of Cause and Effect. You own the results of that which you have caused. Lack of consciousness of the cause does not dismiss the result. If you did it, you own it. This does not mean you were necessarily a bad person. Perhaps your current incarnation is a result of unfinished, inconclusive, or negative experience. Whatever your state of completeness, you were born at a time that the astrological energies reflected your “then” current evolutionary state. Good, bad or indifferent, your spiritual self selected that time and those energies for your incarnation. Since the astrological patterns are entirely predictable, your spiritual self knew what to expect – in theory. Your personality does not seem to have an instruction manual unless you count your astrology chart. Experience can be much more difficult than theory, especially when ignorant of the overall game plan.

“Astrology provides a blueprint to our character
and Character is Destiny.

But... don't forget you are Spirit too.
Learn to be captain of your own ship.”

Where to Begin? Speaking of a gameplan, how about your natal chart? Sounds like a good place to start! Then we will add the karmic dimension, searching out the soul level or the intent of your Spiritual Self. Then we will look at the progressing chart and many other astrological indicators of this life, its lessons and your Soul's development. Remember, you are not here to play hapless victim to fate. You do have some free will on this level. You are here to consciously open a dialog between your Personality and your Soul, thereby enlarging your free will on this, the Personality level. Free will is dependent upon awareness. You are only as free as you can conceptualize. You need the broader perspective of the Soul / Spirit level to expand your free will on the Personality level. In terms of your general evolution, remember:

“The Personality is developed from Aries to Virgo.
The Soul is developed from Virgo to Pisces.”

“Virgo stands for the womb of time
wherein God's plan is being worked out
through pain, struggle and conflict...
the threshold of the birth of the inner man.”

“Pisces... is the inner Self preparing to retreat from the world...
the dustpan of the zodiac... serve or suffer...
one fish swims downstream (Personality),
one fish swims upstream (Soul).
Either the Soul captures the Personality
and it [the Personality] becomes the servant –
or the Soul is bound and made captive by the Personality.”

Soul Development Does that mean you cannot develop your Soul from Aries to Virgo? No. But like all circles, there is a beginning half and an ending half, a thrusting out and a return, the development of self, the development of not-self (read: other), the turning inward to find self (involution), then reflecting that self outwardly (evolution). The most intense experiences we have are those that are most personal to us, and that would be Aries to Virgo-type of experience. We learn from experience and then we apply that knowledge in our ongoing-ness from Libra to Pisces.

What is Karma? Karma is an eastern concept adopted by the west. You have been, have had experience, good, bad, complete, incomplete. You have history. Whenever you set something in motion, whether by action, inaction, or refusal of action, you own the results. Sometimes those results are immediately visible, and sometimes they are not known for a while. Cause and effect, action and reaction - life is a circle. To me eastern thought is quite fatalistic. You are on the wheel of life, doomed to repeat your experiences at the same level until enlightenment removes you from the wheel. To the western mind, free will is primary. See this as a full circle, half fate and half free will. Is there a right or a wrong to such determination?

“When we put our will into action, we must abide by the result.”

Physics states that, “For every action, there is an opposite but equal reaction.” The Bible states, “That which you sow, so shall you reap.” Our modern vernacular says, “What goes around, comes around.” Is everything karmic or do we have some ordinary experiences? You can make yourself crazy trying to read drastic karmic implications into every happening or every thought. However, if you believe in purpose, there are reasons behind our experiences, particularly the ones we do not easily understand.

I doubt seriously if we will ever be able, from this level, to see all the ramifications of our daily experiences. If I leave my house, realize I have forgotten something, return for it, again leave my house, and continue on my way, I have affected my experience. I was not where I planned to be when I planned to be there. Was there anything that was caused or prevented by that momentary change in experience? Did I catch and not miss an important phone call during my delay? Was my participation in an accident prevented? Or was I only late for an appointment? We have no personal way to know. Our lack of knowledge can veil us from seeing the connectedness to what appear to be random incidents. And, do we really need to know? We may overwhelm our already overburdened consciousness with unnecessary detail. It is sufficient to know that there is purpose.

Akasha Who or what is in charge of all this detail, keeping it stored, sorted, and balanced? Is there a great Karmic Board in the sky? Is there a vast memory bank of psychic experience and its residue? Eastern philosophy teaches that there is karmic memory called Akasha. Each individual has a personal Akashic Record, and there are other forms of Akashic Records other than human and individual. Most of us have not consciously visited the Akashic Library. There are those psychics who have, or have at least claimed that they can or have, visited this karmic library and are able to read at will. What an enormous possibility - and responsibility. Is this possibly where we go when we do past life regression? Or does our personal memory reside only within us?

Time What constitutes time – time within a lifetime? Or does time carry karmic results over into other experiences and other lifetimes? Could you initiate in one lifetime and reap results in another? This is the concept of linear time, that one moment follows another in sequence. What about the theory that there is no time, that all is occurring simultaneously? Does simultaneous time mean there are other dimensions or planes of experience, because it is certainly not all happening here today as close as I can tell! I am sure it would be even more chaotic than it already is.

Multiple Personalities? That leads to the question of whether the Soul has more than one Personality in incarnation at a time. In other words, are there several other “mes” experiencing individually? I prefer to believe that my Soul pays strict personal attention to me, but that may be my ego speaking. The Soul is a giant in experience compared to my Personality. It may be totally capable of diverse experience. The Seth material deals with the concept of an Oversoul, experiencing several incarnations

simultaneously. What if that were true? Does what the other mes have experienced (past) come down in my current incarnation as karmic residue? Does what the other mes are currently experiencing have any effect on my current incarnation? Am I responsible for everything and everybody, and all those other mes? Whoa! Now you can see why I prefer one Soul / one Personality at a time. That does not mean I am right. It just provokes interesting internal dialogues.

While we are on the subject of the Soul, when determining an incarnation, the Soul has the overview position (sort of like being in an airplane) while making its plans. It knows where forward is and where backward was. It knows its own state of imbalance, strengths and weaknesses. It knows the upcoming cosmic energy patterns as they are almost entirely predictable, depending upon the skill of the Astrologer. The Soul knows what culture, religion, economic circumstance, gender, etc. will give it the best possibility for growth and success and sends itself into incarnation at that precise moment. Sounds good, doesn't it? Did you ever notice that experience is far tougher than theory? Since life does not come with an instruction manual, unless you have and can read your astrological chart, your Personality does not have a clue. What seemed logical and simple to the Soul can be a hopeless jumble to the Personality. There is a great deal of difference between overview of the Soul and the perceptually limited view of Personality.

There is also the question of whether the Soul will be best served by a Personality that knows or learns what it must accomplish. Success depends on whether the Personality knows or cares about the Soul's purpose or whether the Personality listens or attempts communication with the Soul. The sleeping Personality has no clue, and that describes the bulk of humanity. The awakening Personality begins to realize there is more but has to work its way through the process, sometimes without instruction or assistance. The awakened Personality consciously seeks communication with its Soul level and attempts to develop those skills and intended traits.

Group Karma Is Karma individual only? Or is there collective Karma? Relational? Group? Species? Planetary? Galactic? Universal? Do individuals come together lifetime after lifetime to balance and work out their relational karma or to support others as they learn what we have already learned? Look at the flurry of past life regressions, karmic relationship workshops, reading of the Akashic Records, etc. that has recently become available. Can recognition that the past (what past?) can somehow increase our awareness and influence our today so that we can consciously contribute positively to our future (what future?)?

Look to myth and our history as a culture to see ongoing thought, experience and belief processes. Have we really changed that much? Are there universal or group karmic patterns to the Caucasian / Negroid / oriental question, to the holocaust, to Somalia, Croatia, Northern Ireland, the Middle East, etc.? Is it the “Wrath of God” or is it just the stupidity of man?

Universal Karma Are we collectively, as the human species, expected to be caretakers of our planet and all the inhabitant species? I believe we are just that, and we do not seem to be doing a very good job at the moment!

Paradigm shift Is there the possibility that a paradigm shift in consciousness is due for the human species? Are we on the point of a breakthrough or (if unsuccessful) a breakdown in the evolution of our species? To more fully understand this concept, look to Pierre Teilhard De Chardin’s classic work *The Phenomenon of Man*. I had the good fortune in the early 1970’s to see a slide show based on this book. It was a mind-altering experience. De Chardin postulates that we are in the process of such a paradigm shift. Species either make the adaptation to the demands of the moment and move ahead in evolution, or that particular experiment of nature fails and devolves into an historical footnote. There is no guarantee that we will succeed. To fail would spell the end of our species, even though such an end could occur instantly or take millennia to happen.

Do we as Earthlings have a karmic pattern? Does Mother Earth have a karmic pattern, a destiny? Can the same questions be asked on a galactic or universal level? As metaphysicians and astrologers, we know that a universal principle should apply, regardless of the level of application or if the principle is not universal. We postulate “as above, so below” and have created a system of analogies which we call astrology to help us apply the cosmic principles from the heavenly solar system cycles to the living of a life on this Earth. If a human can have a karmic pattern, then our collective can have a karmic pattern which affects us as individuals. If our collective can have a karmic pattern, then the next largest unit can have a karmic pattern, and so on and so forth, all the way to the cosmological level. Mother Earth and all other systems are living energies that stem from what was available at the moment of Creation. Just because a life form is abstract in concept or not in human form, does it negate that it is a life form? Earlier in this lesson, I discussed trying to define the Infinite through the mechanism of our finite minds.

Mentors Are there watchers, caretakers, opportunists, teachers, etc. ready to help us take the next step? Is there a next step? Oh, I hope so - on both counts. If what we are, have, and experience at this moment is all there is, then continued existence does not make much sense. We are in a process that we can see and experience. Process implies change and movement, not just “what you sees is what you gets”. We have been, we are, we evermore shall be. We are in a process. There must be a next step.

Are we alone? Has anyone made the journey before us? Perhaps those sojourners can assist those of us who seem to be challenged in our learning. Perhaps those sojourners are concerned that we might hurt ourselves or others. Perhaps helping us is part of their personal process. We go back to the “brother’s keeper” concept. Is their progress dependent on our progress? Is it “all for one and one for all”?

The paradigm shift I mentioned applies here. Supposedly, 100% of mankind does not have to be ready, willing or able. A small percentage of 7.9+ billion people can tip the scales for humanity’s shift in consciousness, allowing the whole of the human race, and whatever else we affect or infect, to make that shift. By comparison, a few can take the rest with them. I want very badly to be one of the paradigm shifters and so I study and write these books. Awareness, willingness, trust and a thimble of knowledge is what I offer the universe. Who and where are you?

Spirit or Letter of the Law Is karma “an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth” as it says in the Old Testament of the Bible? Do you need to balance your karma as payment of specifics? Now, there is a scary thought. Or is learning from the experience the primary lesson? In other words, is it the letter of the law or the spirit of the law that is the lesson? This is a current issue in our court systems. Do we interpret the law as the purpose for which it was written? Or do we interpret the law to the letter as it was written? Which is more important as an end result, the purpose for which it was written or the words chosen to write it? In our chaotic legal system, this is how our criminals at times have more rights than their victims. The phrase “Justice is blind” fits well here. Is karma a balancing of the scales, item by item, the letter of the law? Or is it enlightenment as to the right or wrong of an issue and our participation, and our value systems?

Process or Outcome Which is more important, the outcome or the learning process? If you must build a clock, which is more important – the end, which we call a clock, or the experience developed during the learning curve? For example, we all know that relationships are a process, yet we place value on a good relationship, which sounds suspiciously like

a result. Good relationships stem from developing the skills necessary to attract and maintain a good relationship. There must be an ongoing attention to maintaining that good relationship. If you take it for granted or do not consciously participate in the relationship, it can become ill or even die. Is the process the lesson? If the learning process is the key, then an eye for an eye in results does not apply.

Should we know when karma is about to descend? Are we better anticipating or being ignorant? Can we maintain a positive attitude? Should we be unprepared in order to learn a more profound lesson? Should we determine after the fact how to grow, rationalize, understand or excuse? If we know ahead, we would alter our attitudes and our actions. Will that serve the Soul's purpose, or does it need the Personality to encounter, work its way through and learn through the process itself?

Termination If Soul determines that the Personality has not, nor ever can, learn the lessons of the incarnation as planned, can it pull the plug on this lifetime? We call that death. Is anything, no matter how negative, ever really a loss to the Soul when you have eternity at your disposal? Can we ever descend into such negativity that we are "lost" to the Source? Is there such a thing as a "nasty" Soul? We know Spirit cannot experience imperfection, so "nasty" has to be a function of Personality and / or Soul. Just how patient is our Source?

Past only? Is karma only past-oriented? In other words, do only our actions taken in the past affect our today, and today's actions affect tomorrow's experience? To some degree this may be true. But if it were totally true, then nothing we can do or think today can affect the outcome of what was previously generated. I do not believe that this is true. It is too fatalistic for me. If I cannot appreciably affect the progress of my life, I might as well give up and go along for the ride, and remain unconscious as I am securely in the grip of that ride.

Or may I take a conscious role in my evolution, own my past (even in ignorance), own my present (working through my denials), and affect my future by attuning myself to my Soul level and my purpose (to whatever degree possible)? I do not know how much further ahead it will place me, but I, personally, would like to try to awaken and to own my own stuff, to work on my denials, to dialog with my Soul level, and to elevate my consciousness to the best of my ability.

When is too much information a bad thing? Do I need to muck around in my past, stirring up God knows what through past life readings or dwelling on the karmic implications? Life is tough enough on today's terms. Do only that which truly contributes to productivity in your life today. Do not stir up the past out of simple curiosity. Do look to the past to provide insight and aid for today's lessons. Reach to your Soul level to know the difference between the unnecessary and the inevitable.

Grace What about Grace? Am I dependent on my Deity to come to my aid because I am unable to reach that level of spiritual consciousness while embodied? If I reach towards my Deity and my Deity reaches towards me (think of the painting in the Sistine Chapel), or if my Deity even accepts my attempts, can the success of that trip be given to me by my Deity as Grace?

Is my Deity paying personal attention to me? Do I need my Deity's personal attention? Is my Deity a principle of creation and not a personhood? When I pray, do I pray to a personal God, expecting a response of some kind? Or do I pray to the universe? Or do I pray for the orderly unfolding of my experience? My beliefs are going to be based on my personal need, which may not be *your* needs or your beliefs.

What about salvation through a Deity or a spiritual leader or teacher? Am I personally responsible for my return to my Source? Am I too lowly or too full of sin to contemplate a personal association with my Deity? Do I need a religion, a preacher, or a mediator between my Deity and me to either make the link for me or ease my passage as I reach toward that link? Am I awake enough, brave enough, strong enough, and tenacious enough to trust myself alone to make that connection with my Deity?

As you can see, it would be far easier to turn over my entire spiritual nature, its evolution, salvation and eventual reunion with its source to some elevated personage whom I believe made their own trip successfully. Am I a child of the Creator, inheritor of the kingdom and its keys, made in the image and likeness, one of the sons or daughters of God? Or am I less than that?

Cop Out? Karma can be a cop out, an excuse for not dealing with life on its terms (e.g., "I cannot leave my spouse, it is my karma."). Perhaps the karma in this lesson is about learning how to end unproductive relationships and not how to remain in them. Likewise, karma is thought to be negative, a payback for misdeeds, which is not true. Karma is eclectic, responding to you with sunshine or rain. Karma is not an excuse.

It is a process and a result – with an attendant lesson. If what we have sown is positive, then we will reap the results of that action. Karma is simply cause and effect, nonjudgmental in its application. What goes around comes around. Once we begin to awaken, we can make conscious choices as to what we wish to experience as our future results, thereby affecting the seeds we sow now and which we will encounter in the future as karma.

Dharma Karma in the making is called Dharma. Let us resolve to awaken, become conscious, own our past, work on our denials, evolve our thinking, make better choices, connect with our Spiritual self to our highest possibility, and set in motion that which will bring about a more positive future. Do not engage with your built-up karma as a challenge. It could be an enormous task or just plain mean. I saw this in action in a friend / client's life. She stated to the universe that she wanted to pay back all her karma all at once. You could not believe what happened to her. She lived through it. But trust me, you do not want to attempt such a thing. Trust in the process of life to give you as much as you can handle in a form that you can handle, and let the Law of Cause and Effect work itself out naturally.

Spiritual Development: the Guideposts

We have been given a zodiac as a spiritual guidepost, a natural unfolding process of twelve steps. Those twelve steps are uniquely composed of both quality and element. We have studied them on a mundane or natal level. Now we must take that base of information and uplift the meanings to a higher level – the spiritual. We are not going to learn anything new. We are just going to apply what we know to a higher definition. The word “education” comes from the Latin word “educare”, which means to draw forth that which we already know.

Cardinal qualities are direct, to the point, dynamic, fast acting, more objective than subjective, and openly revealed. Cardinal meets life head on, initiates, and is self-assertive. They are executives, active with fairly short attention spans.

Fixed qualities are motivated by principles, and are reticent or slow to commit. They are builders, consistent, persistent, organized, undeviating, planners, contractors, constructors, great reservoirs of energy and / or power.

Mutable qualities are adjustable, adaptable, flexible, more free flowing, easy-going and tolerant. They are relaters, great imitators, perhaps with a new slant or angle, distributors, salesmen, promoters, diplomats, and teachers.

As an old astrological saying goes, “Cardinal initiates, fixed builds, mutable sells.”

Fire element is life as activity, fiery in nature, inspirational, spiritual, impulsive, and passionate.

Earth element is life as physical, practical in nature, material, solid, patient, and stable.

Air element is life as mind, intellectual in nature, aspiring, relating, intuitive, and communicative.

Water element is life as emotion, feeling in nature, emoting, reflective, responsive, psychic.

Same saying as above, adapted, “Fire creates, earth builds, air sells, water buys.”

Spiritualize the qualities and the elements. Choose any of the word definitions. Play with it. As you put the combinations together, other keywords will suggest themselves. Some may not be easy, but keep trying.

Examples of spiritual life expressing as:

Card / Fire	dynamic creative
Card / Earth	executive material
Card / Air	openly intuitive
Card / Water	self-assertive psychic
Fixed / Earth	organized stability
Fixed / Fire	principled inspiration
Fixed / Air	practical intellect
Fixed / Water	undeviating feelings
Mutable / Air	flexible relating
Mutable/Earth	teacher principled
Mutable / Fire	freely impulsive
Mutable / Water	tolerant / reflective



Samples from other astrological authors' examples:

Aries / Cardinal Fire / Spiritual birth

Hickey: untamed fire of impulse
Jocelyn: the will to be manifest
Jay: outgoing life

Taurus / Fixed Earth / Spiritual fertility

Hickey: freshly plowed earth of springtime
Jocelyn: spiritualized will
Jay: directed desire

Gemini / Mutable Air / Spiritual law of opposites

Hickey: light, changeable breezes of early summer
Jocelyn: dualism and contradiction
Jay: dual consciousness

Cancer / Cardinal Water / Spiritual instinctual consciousness

Hickey: restless tides of the ocean
Jocelyn: metamorphosis
Jay: physical incarnation

Leo / Fixed Fire / Spiritual self-consciousness

Hickey: fire of the heart
Jocelyn: a galactic sounding harp
Jay: God-man, objective

Virgo / Mutable Earth / Spiritual perfection

Hickey: womb of time, harvest
Jocelyn: the spiritual core, need for catharsis
Jay: God-man, subjective

Libra / Cardinal Air / Spiritual turning point of evolutionary process

Hickey: high winds and storms, followed by calm
Jocelyn: balancing scales of justice, union
Jay: balance between physical and spiritual man

Scorpio / Fixed Water / Spiritual death, resurrection, rebirth

Hickey: hidden, stagnant marsh waters to be reborn
Jocelyn: awakening, transmutation
Jay: key to discipleship

Sagittarius / Mutable Fire / Spiritual aspiration, super-conscious

Hickey: archer shoots arrow, knows not the destiny
Jocelyn: link of spiritual consciousness
Jay: directed life of discipleship

Capricorn / Cardinal Earth / Spiritual testing
Hickey: the mountain goat, climbing, solitary
Jocelyn: spiritualizing the physical nature
Jay: the Christ Consciousness

Aquarius / Fixed Air / Spiritual liberation
Hickey: the clear crystal electric air of winter
Jocelyn: awaken the angel within man
Jay: choice of service, functioning as Soul

Pisces / Mutable Water / Spiritual renewal, absorption
Hickey: dustpan of the zodiac, serve or suffer
Jocelyn: the Trinity in manifestation
Jay: liberation, integration, serve – no choice



As I mentioned in my dedication, I stand on the shoulders of the giants who have gone before me. I have just shown how Isabel Hickey's words and philosophy affected my spiritual development. Now I would like to share my personal words and thoughts. I call them Thumbnails. This is where my head is as I write this workbook, the philosophy into which I have grown. But, it is an ongoing process - or at least it should be.

Suggested reading (and there are far more than listed):

- ✓ *A Cosmic Doctrine* by Isabel Hickey
- ✓ *Meditations on the Signs of the Zodiac* by John Jocelyn
- ✓ *The Phenomenon of Man* by Pier Teilhard De Chardin (the slide show was phenomenal)
- ✓ *Karmic Astrology* by Delphine Jay
- ✓ any of Joseph Campbell's books on mythology

Marilyn's Thumbnails

*There is only one God Ω – the Creator expressing through Its Creation.
God is the only game in town.
My word for God is Awesome!*

*I am a Child of the Universe –
a Creation of the Creator, special and unique.*

*My consciousness is eternal – I have been...I am...
and I evermore shall be.*

*I am an evolving spiritual being,
which has nothing to do with religion.
I am learning how to 'walk my talk'.*

*I am evolving spiritually, in spite of falling off the path occasionally,
falling into God on another path.
(There is no place else to go.)*

*Paths and people are not higher or better than others,
just different.*

*I am spiritually guided – I am doing what I am supposed to be doing.
I do not always understand it.*

*The universe is purposeful, there are no mistakes.
I am where I am supposed to be. I may not like it.*

*I am totally responsible for all my experiences,
those I like, and those I do not like.
Perspective: change is up to me.*

*Moments of grace or miracles do occur – God is not dead.
I am humble in the presence of God's grace.*

*God gave us a pattern, a blueprint to study,
and a mind with which to study and grow.
I keep my mind open.*

*Prayer is me talking to God.
Meditation is me listening to God.*

*Never argue with a closed mind – it cannot hear you.
And I doubt seriously if that closed mind can hear God either.*

*"I am not in the world to set it right, but to see it right."
(author unknown)*

Bible Passages

Strong's Concordance and Lamsa Bible
Old Testament unless marked NT (New Testament)

Astrology

(Aldebaran, Arcturus, Mazzaroth depend on source)

Aldebaran: Job 9:9; Job 38:32

Arcturus: Job 9:9; 38:32

Astrologer: Daniel 2:10

(ers): Isa 47:13; Dan 1:20; 2:2, 27; 4:7, 5:7, 11, 15

Chaldea (n) (ns) (es):

Chaldea: Jer 50:10; 51:24, 35; Ez 11:24; 16:29; 23:15-16

Chaldean: Ezr 5:12; Da 2:10

Chaldeans: Job 1:17; Isa 23:13; 43:14; 47:1, 5; 48:14, 20; Jer 21:4, 9; 22:25; 24:5; 25:12; 32:4, 5, 24, 28, 29, 43; 33:5; 35:11; 37:5, 8-11, 13-14; 8:2, 18; 38:19, 23; 39:8; 40:9, 10; 41:3, 18; 43:3; 50:1, 8, 25, 35, 45; 51:4, 54; 52:7-8, 14, 17; Eze 1:3; 23:13; 23:14, 23; Da 1:4; 2:2, 4-5; 10; 3:8; 4:7; 5:7, 11, 30; 9:1; Hab 1:6; Jer 39:5, NT Acts 7:14

Chaldees: Ge 11:28, 31; 15:7; 2 Ki 24:2; 25:4-5, 10, 13, 24-26; 2 Ch 36:17; Ne 9:7; Isa 13:19

Constellations: Isa 13:10

Equinox: Job 37:17

Heaven (s) (ly): has 6-1/2 columns
particularly: Isaiah 47:13, Job 38:33

Light and derivatives has 1-1/2 columns

Lights: Gen 1:14-16

Magi: Matt 2:1, 7, 16 (See wiseman - wise and men)

Magician(s): Gen 41:8, 24; Ex 7:11, 22; 8:7, 18-19; 9:11; Da 1:20; 2:2, 27; 2:10, 47, 49; 5:11

Mazzaroth: Job 38:32

Moon (s): 1/2 column

Orion: Job 9:9; 38:31; Amos 5:8

Planets: 2 King 23:5

Pleiades: Job 9:9; 38:31, Amos 5:8

Season (s) and derivatives: has 1 column, Seasons: Gen 1:14; Ex 18:22, 26; Le 23:4; Psa 16:7, 14:19; Da 2:21; NT Mt 21:41; Act 1:7; 14:17; 20:18; 1 Th 5:1

Sign (s) (ed): has 2 columns

Star: Num 24:17; Amos 5:26; NT Matt 2:2, 7, 9, 10; Acts 7:43; 1 Cor 15:41; 2 Pet 1:19; Rev 2:28; 8:10-11; 9:1; 22:16

Stars: Gen 1:16; 15:5; 22:17; 26:4; 37:9; Ex 32:13; Deu 1:10; 4:19; 10:22; 28:62; Jud 5:20; 1 Chr 27:23; Neh 4:21; 9:23; Job 3:9; 9:7; 22:12; 25:5; 38:7; Psal 8:13; 136:9; 147:4; 148:3; Ecl 12:2; Isa 13:10; 14:13; Jer 31:35; Ez 32:7; Dan 8:10; 12:3; Joel 2:10; 3:15; Amos 5:8; Obad vs 4; Nah 3:16 NT Matt 24:29; Mark 13:25; Luke 21:25; Acts 27:20; 1 Cor 15:41; Heb 11:12; Jude vs 13; Rev 1:16, 20; 2:1; 3:1; 6:13; 8:12; 12:1, 4

Stargazers: Isa 47:13

Sun: 1-1/2 columns (also sunrising) Gen 37:9; Deu 17:3; Job 9:7; Josh 10:12; 2 Ki 23:5

Non-astrology

Babylon: 2-1/2 columns

See also Babel, Chaldea, Seshach

Dream (s) (ed) (er) (ers) (eth): 2 columns

Divination (s): Nu 22:7; 23:23, Deu 18:10; 2 Ki 17:17, Ter 14:14, Eze 12:24; 13:6, 7; 21:21-23; NT Act 16:16

Soothsayer (s) (ing): Jos 13:22; Isa 2:6; Da 2:27; 4:7; 15:7, 11; Mic 5:12; NT Act 16:16

Sorcerer (s) (ess) (ies) (ery): Ex 7:11; Jer 27:9; Da 2:2; Mal 3:5; Re 9:21; 18:23; 21:8; 22:15; Isa 47:9-12; 57:3; NT Act 8:9, 11; 13:6,8

Unicorn(s): Num 23:22; 24:8; Job 39:9-10; Deut 33:17; Psa 22:21; 29:6; 92:10; Isa 34:7

Vision (s): 1 column

Wind(s): 1-1/2 columns

Wisdom: 2 columns

Wisemen or Wisewomen: see wise, men, women

Vertical line on the left side of the page.

Individual Karmic Evolution

Natal Karmic Charting

Somewhere back in the 1980s, I took a class on karmic charting with Master Astrologer Delphine Jay of Orlando, Florida. Although it was a long drive for me, I took every class possible from Delphine and applied that material extensively over many years. Ongoing readings deepened my understanding of the karmic charting process. Still, Delphine's workshop material is the core or basis of my karmic charting practice and classroom instruction. I would like to acknowledge her as my source and inspiration before I share what I have learned, adapted and deepened over the years. According to Delphine when I took her class, the original material was found in Hindu karmic astrology methods. Those who practice sidereal or oriental astrology may have encountered this method in their studies.

As we study metaphysics and related subjects, we become aware that all is not just as we physically see it. Yes, we have bodies and experiences, but there is much more to life, often just out of focus or view, off camera, occasionally implied or suggested, subliminal or suspected.

A student of metaphysics learns early that for everything that exists on the visible plane, there is a non-physical form from which it is derived – the idea behind the thing. If the idea (non-tangible) did not exist, the visible object could not exist. Should the physical counterpart to the idea cease to exist, that invisible idea can create anew. For example, many snapshots can be created from one photographic negative. If a snapshot is destroyed, the idea is not dead, another snapshot can be produced from the negative. Behind every lamp is the unseen concept of a lamp. The lamp can come in many varieties, colors and products, but the original lamp concept invisibly permeates each lamp.

As working astrologers, we construct a natal chart and proceed to read, progress, evaluate, extrapolate, and many other processes, the meaning of that chart in the individual's physical life. The natal chart is considered to be the initial roadmap and description of your life and is very useful for

navigating this lifetime and its experience. But where or what is the originating concept behind each natal chart? What purpose does the physical natal chart and the experience it describes serve in the spiritual life of the individual? What is its unseen concept?

Without a human hand inside it, a physical glove is inert and lifeless. We could manufacture millions of gloves, but until they are filled and shaped by a human hand, they are limp and unremarkable. Once a hand has been inserted, the glove takes on life and form. The glove concept can be duplicated, but the life-giving principle is essential to the purpose of the concept. Let us use this analogy to describe the influence of a karmic chart upon a natal chart.

Delphine taught that the karmic chart underlies and shapes the physical chart in the same manner that a physically living hand shapes a glove. The karmic chart reveals the spiritual purpose behind the physical incarnation and its map, the natal chart. In lesson one, the concept of Spirit, Soul and Personality were introduced. This is where these concepts have taken me in my studies.

To recap: Spirit is an all or nothing dimension of being, our immediate connection to our Source. When the lessons of Spirit have been satisfied, we will be reabsorbed by the Source and all other dimensions of being will cease to be of separated value, the Soul and the Personality. When, as Spirit, we fully acknowledge oneness with God, that is exactly what we will be. At that point, we have no segments. We are complete and whole, at one with the Source, not separate, and we are absorbed. To the degree we can understand it, we are at one with nothing missing, fully completed, satisfying the purpose of our evolution.

The Personality is what we possess in each experience, who or what we physically are, how we view ourselves, and how we describe ourselves. Most people do not think beyond the Personality. If we think spiritually at all, we talk about having a Soul or a Spirit, as if the Personality is primary and “owns” the other dimensions. This could not be further from the truth. The Personality is the least developed facet of the three. In truth, the Spirit owns both the Soul and the Personality. The Personality serves the Soul, and the Soul and the Personality serve the Spirit. All elements of self are on loan. It all truly belongs to our Source.

As we experience as Personalities, we develop skills, abilities, and comprehension. We grow and develop. Sometimes we blow it altogether and create problems, incompletions, and perhaps negative results. Where do these “things” or various states of imbalance reside between experiences? The Spirit cannot experience anything short of perfection, the “Aha!” principle discussed in lesson one. Enter the Soul.

To me, Soul is the Akashic memory of our experiences, the way station between our developing Personalities and our ever-vigilant Spirit. The Soul is the sum total of everything we have experienced as Personality. The Soul knows who and where we have been, the state of balance or imbalance in our development, and (most importantly) what it needs to experience in order to eventually complete its spiritual journey to the land of the “Ahas”! So the Soul becomes the designer, the architect for the experience of the Personality, the chooser for experience, and the arbitrator of that experience. As the Personality completes its mission, its sum total is drawn into the Soul as the Soul contemplates its next experience on its way to reunion with the Spirit.

The Personality therefore represents the Soul level formalized into matter. The Soul is the “why” of the Personality, the invisible idea behind your physical manifestation, your individual essence. The karmic is that which designs, underlies and supports physical existence. The karmic map pictures your Soul at its then (physical birth) current stage of development, as a result of its many stages of consciousness – the end product of what you have become as a result of what you have set into manifestation. Your current lifetime, therefore, is the crystallization of the state of consciousness your Soul had attained at the moment of physical birth and is conditioned by your residual karma.

As previously mentioned, this karmic charting is based on a Hindu method of determining the karmic pattern. The Sun / Moon (solunar) midpoint is used as the Ascendant for the karmic chart. Since the Moon in a natal chart represents what you have been collectively up to the moment of birth (your history) and the Sun in a natal chart represents those qualities you wish to develop or embody this lifetime (your future), then the solunar midpoint represents the “now” of the Soul at the moment of physical incarnation. By constructing a chart based on that point, and using the natal planets unchanged, we are able to pinpoint the development of the Soul at the moment of incarnation, and its intent for the lifetime currently being experienced.

First, we will learn how to construct the karmic chart, a relatively simple procedure, and then how to read that chart from a karmic standpoint. I am not aware of any computer program that provides this type of charting. As we read the chart, we must remember we are not reading the physical incarnation or process, but the state of Soul development, the abilities and talents already developed by the Soul through past experience, the equipment you currently possess. There are no freebies in the universe. Everything is earned or deserved, one way or another. All that you have been has conditioned your “now”. And also, all that you wish to become conditions your “now”. Since we are constantly in the state of becoming, it is important to recognize your patterning from previous experience and your intent. We have to live in the now because it determines our future. To dwell in the past or the future is to forsake the now, which is really all we can control or alter.

How to Construct a Karmic Chart

Starting with the natal chart, find the shortest distance between the natal Sun and Moon in degrees and minutes using zodiacal longitude.

- 1) Add together the zodiacal positions of the Sun and Moon and divide by two. This is the midpoint axis and degree.
- 2) For a female chart, use the midpoint located between the Moon and the Sun (go forward in the zodiac starting with the Moon.) For a male chart, use the midpoint located between the Sun and the Moon (go forward in the zodiac starting with the Sun).
- 3) Once the zodiacal degree and sign has been determined, use that position as the Ascendant degree for the karmic chart. The balance of the houses are done in the equal house system (using degree and minute of the ascendant and sequential signs on the balance of the houses).
- 4) Once the equal house chart has been erected using the chosen solunar midpoint as the Ascendant, simply drop your natal placements into the chart without change. Use the ten planetary positions, the node and Dark Moon Lilith, if that position is available to you.
- 5) If you have constructed the midpoint correctly, the erected chart will show the Sun in the top half of the chart for a male and the Moon in the top half of the chart for a female.

3) Sun 7 Scorpio 56:	210° + 7°56'	= 217°56'
+ Moon 15 Aquarius 36:	300° + 15°36'	= <u>315°36'</u>
Add together		= 532°92'
		divide by 2
Solunar axis		= 266° Sag/Gem 46'
Convert to zodiacal		= 26 Sagittarius / Gemini 46'
Male midpoint Sun (Scorpio) to Moon (Aquarius)		= Sagittarius
Female midpoint Moon (Aquarius) to Sun (Scorpio)		= Gemini

(Example 3 is my chart that will be our primary karmic chart example.)

Proof: Sun in top of karmic chart if male, Moon in top of karmic chart if female.

Erect an equal-house chart starting with the midpoint selected on the cusp of the first house (the Karmic Ascendant). Degrees and minutes of each house are identical to the Ascendant (30° degrees for each house), with succeeding signs on each cusp, counter-clockwise. Drop natal planets, node, and Dark Moon Lilith (if available), as given in the natal chart, into the chart frame erected.

Occasionally, the karmic and the natal charts will have similar degrees. This is not an error. It is an indication of the importance of this particular lifetime in the development of the Soul, a reinforcement of sorts. This happened with my personal chart. I have 28 Gemini 46 rising in my natal chart and 26 Gemini 46 as my Karmic Ascendant. In class. I was sure I had made a mistake in calculation of the Karmic Ascendant, which can be anywhere in the chart. I was assured by Delphine that it was not an error, but a message that this was a key lifetime for me. Possibly this is why I am writing this and other astrological workbooks.

How to Read the Karmic Chart

Karmic astrology requires a good grasp of the basics of astrology. As a matter of fact, all facets of astrology require knowledge of the basics, as all facets are applications of basics. Wherever you are weak in those basics, that is where you will have a problem adapting your knowledge to other applications. Just as relational astrology is extrapolated from the basics, so is medical, or vocational, or karmic.

Houses Please note that an empty house does not imply lack of prior experience. If empty, the sign on the house cusp provides the total message, just as in a natal chart. Note also that the 1st and 10th houses are known as *soul mission* houses, the most important houses in the karmic chart. The 7th house contains the sign to balance your Ascendant skills and lessons. Use natal knowledge, but adapt it for karmic application.

- 1) *Overall Karmic Mission*: The Ascendant is the most personal and visible point on any chart. Karmically, these are the character traits to work on for this sojourn, the most obvious traits for Soul growth. The natal Ascendant is what others see of us. It therefore also represents the general effect we may have on others. The ruler of the Karmic Ascendant is key, as is the natal ruler.
- 2) Contrary to natal astrology, the 2nd house represents the past of the karmic development reached at the moment of incarnation. Therefore, the past represented by the 2nd house is a clue to the present (moment of birth). Natively, the 2nd contains our talents and resources, so these are character traits previously developed and spiritual possessions imbued in the current character.
- 3) The natal communication house represents how communication was developed or used in the past (karmically), whether practically (concrete) or intuitively (abstract). Using the natal analogy of communication and transportation, the 3rd can also represent astral travel or other means of soul movement and the use of sounds or symbols for communication (i.e., chanting, toning).
- 4) This karmic house represents the Soul's attitude toward Earth as a home, the Soul's polarization in matter. As such, the 4th represents your Earth links and karmic ties to your own generation. It represents your karmic foundation, and the basis on which you approach experience on this plane at this time.
- 5) The 5th house of creativity and self-expression shows karmic ties with your children which may have been children of your body or children of your mind (creativity), and the younger generation. The Soul love expression symbolized by the 5th should be equated to spiral love, not the physical / material circle love of this earthly plane of existence.

- 6) The natal house of disease karmically shows the spiritual or astral source of disease. Planets in this house can indicate “dis-ease” conditions brought forward from prior experience. If empty of planets, the 6th represents the house of dharma – karma in the making, the actual sowing of karma. Physical limitations will be this lifetime’s process, not necessarily carryover from the past.
- 7) While the 1st represents our effect on others, the 7th represents qualities we owe to others, our own Soul’s polarity. Natively, this is the house of shadow, what we seek in others and how others affect us. Just remember the playing field and participants are karmic, not current. This is where we must balance our excesses. By sign and planet, this is where we reach for answers. Karmic ties represented by the 7th exclude your children (5th).
- 8) The 8th of joint values shows our states of imbalance, karmic debts, and what we owe to life and others in terms of cusp sign quality. The usual 8th house meanings must be converted to karmic associations. Joint values are character traits worked on or achieved through karmic development relationally. The occult 8th shows the potential to achieve connection on esoteric or occult levels.
- 9) The 9th of abstract reasoning most importantly shows the Soul’s activities to reach God through your own higher self. This is your spiritual potential, your spiritual pathway. God does not have a problem with communication. Any problem that exists resides within each of us. Of particular influence here would also be the spirituality or religion of others that we encounter karmically.
- 10) *Earth Mission*: As the cusp of achievement, the sign on the cusp illustrates what we must do to fulfill our Karmic Mission. This achievement is not to satisfy us personally, but is required in this circumstance for this incarnation to be successful. The 10th also represents temptations and / or obstacles. Be careful it does not become a point of cop-out.
- 11) The sign on the 11th cusp of friendships represents our ability to recognize general karmic links. These are the types of friendships, groups and associations we attract and through which we must do our Soul work. Since the 11th is always the result of the work done in the 10th, they are intimately linked. This represents souls well-known to us who are incarnate and available. If these turn out to be negative (on this level), due to planetary or aspect connotations, we would be very vulnerable here. Sometimes our greatest teachers are those who make us the most uncomfortable.

12) Where will all this lead? The karmic 12th is the house of the future and gives suggestions or conclusions as to your next *important* (not just next) incarnation. Planets positioned here indicate that your next important incarnation has already been settled and you are locked into the pattern. No planets here indicate that choices and options for your next sojourn are still open. If so – I plan to hide. Are all sojourns on this Earth?

Planets represent Soul qualities previously developed through experience. When reading, be sure not to slip into natal interpretation. This is not about the Personality. While the natal definitions help establish a beginning point, the reading is about the karmic conditioning, not the physical level. While it is not easy to stay out of Personality when reading, it can be done. Experience teaches. The planets represent qualities of Soul development at the moment of this incarnation. There is no right or wrong, or more or less spiritual - there just is an assessment of the current progress.



Sun While the Karmic Ascendant shows the qualities the Soul must utilize and develop, the Karmic Sun represents the Soul itself, our animating principle. In a karmic chart, the Sun is not the ego. Read the Sun as the developing Soul, described by sign and house. “The planet was in the sign of _____ and the house of _____ at the moment of physical birth.” Then add the balance of detail.



Moon With the natal Moon representing our memory bank, the karmic Moon represents emotional memories (such as déjà vu) as they express within its house relationship. The Moon remembers emotional connectedness, familial ties, affectional ties, and also negative emotional memories. Have you ever met someone and either had an instant rapport or an instant dislike? Soul memory.



Mercury With natal Mercury representing the conscious analytical mind, Mercury karmically represents the ability to tap into universal mind and our mental surroundings for connection / intuition, etc. The function of natal Mercury is to collect, assess, and divide up data. Just step up those readings into the spiritual level.

Venus Natal Venus represents our relating ability - to share, to attract, to love. Venus is not as highly developed as Neptune in the ability to love. Venus loves in a circle – what is given out gets returned. Neptune loves unconditioned by the circle, into a spiral of giving. Karmic Venus represents your growth towards that ideal of spiral love, the spiritual idea behind the physical manifestation.



Mars Natal Mars is our ability to act out, to assert, and to make happen, sometimes aggressively. Spiritualized Mars has energy to invest, to distribute, to embrace, to rejuvenate or energize the self or others according to house position. If Mars is negatively handicapped by aspect, this will be compromised.



Jupiter Nately, Jupiter is the philosopher, the expander, and the mediator between cultures and creeds. Karmic Jupiter is where you can put such past experience to work, and what you already have chosen to do. Look for help to the Moon or any retrograde planets. Jupiter is what we already have and are willing to give, and what we can teach or share philosophically.



Saturn Natal Saturn is the teacher, the policeman, and the structure or limits of physical experience. Karmically, Saturn is experience as teacher on the highest turn of the wheel. Karmic Saturn is totally dependable. Never worry, it will give you exactly what you deserve. Am I my brother's keeper? Yes. We are responsible. Human evolution is a collective. Ultimately, we must progress together.



Uranus Natal Uranus is the planet of surprise and enlightenment. Karmically, the Uranus house placement shows where experiences are forced, not chosen, to help rush you along. Karmic Uranus serves as a catalyst, and can change others without necessarily changing yourself. These experiences are not your fault or choice – they are serving as the catalyst for growth itself.





Neptune Natal Neptune represents the ideal we continually reach for, unconditional love. Karmic Neptune represents the ability to use psychic awareness to solve problems through meditation and faith. Neptune's house position is where ideals are apt to work or where you can make your ideals real. Read the positive qualities of Neptune.



Pluto Natal Pluto represents the unconscious depths of us, our personal cesspool. Karmically, Pluto is where we find excuses or rationalizations to avoid what we could be doing (the copout, the traps of desire), and will give you the "way out" according to house matters. Pluto also rules Soul rejuvenation, and unconscious abilities and reserves, where coping-out may not be comfortable.



Natal Node The natal node has been known to represent associations, both positive and negative, which contribute to or detract from personal progress. The karmic nodes represent association with groups of people involved in karmic patterns where you come together for a specific action, having grouped together before. The location of the karmic nodes is where you are learning to establish these ties.



Dark Moon (DM) Lilith Unless you are familiar with Dark Moon Lilith and have an ephemeris, you may ignore this placement at this time. I have done over forty years of personal research and application with DM Lilith and believe it to be factual and usable in all applications. My original source was Ivy Goldstein-Jacobson's work. Several years later, I took Astrologer Delphine Jay's Lilith class. The Jacobson book had an approximate ephemeris. Delphine's book prompted an accurate Lilith Ephemeris and was published by AFA, but it ended with year 2000. Fortunately, Astrologer Michael Munkasey developed an accurate ephemeris for 2000 to 2050 for Delphine's book update. Both books are available through AFA. That allows accurate coverage for 150 consecutive years of births.

DM Lilith moves 3°2' per day on average, completing her orbit in 119 days, always direct and never retrograde. My general intermediate-level workbooks will contain more general information about DM Lilith. Most reading information I have encountered on Lilith is negative. Mae Wilson-Ludlam wrote about Lilith's positive side, but I have never encountered that in my experience. There is also an asteroid named Lilith and a Black Moon Lilith point. This material is about Dark Moon Lilith only.

DM Lilith Karmically, Dark Moon Lilith represents a spiritual crisis point and your choice may not be involved in the house area affected. Either you do it or she does it for you. She may act like the wife of Saturn or Uranus. Lilith represents where you can hit rock bottom in this life experience and make a decision related to the house to move “up”. It is as if something within yourself stands up and rises for a rebuilding of the Soul. According to Jay, when highly motivated, Lilith gives phenomenal insight.

Positive / Negative You will notice that most of the planet reading material is quite positive. But every front has a back. Every planet has positive and negative sides and readings. Since you have not been absorbed into the Source as perfect Spirit, you are not purely positive at this time. Do not be afraid to recognize that your Soul is a work in progress, with light and dark facets. Planets under siege in the natal are also under siege in the karmic chart. For example, while the Sun represents the natal ego, negatively it is egotistical. While the Moon represents the emotions, negatively it is moody, etc. A negatively read Sun (Soul) might be one that confuses incarnation with Godhood. Instead of “the power of God flows through me as me”, it could be misinterpreted as “I Am the power”.

Signs Definitions or expressions of karmic qualities supersede the mundane sign lessons. The easiest description of a sign is that of a lens through which light passes. The light represents each planet. The color of the lens (sign) through which the light passes conditions our perception of that light. The planets in a karmic chart are elevated to define spiritual qualities. We must also elevate the description of each lens to see the spiritual lessons of the signs. The sign of the Karmic Ascendant is dominant in this experience. The second most important sign is that of the overall mission, the sign on the cusp of the 10th house. Common ties between houses of occupation and houses of rulership apply, but on a higher spiritual level. All other house cusp signs are important, but secondary to the Karmic Ascendant (who you are) and the overall mission (what you must do.)

The signs play out strongly in the house system. For example Aries on any house is where you can be in too much of a hurry or where the Aries energy must elevate itself to its highest possibility concerning the matters and people of that house.

The following gives the basic karmic message of each sign. As an aid I have appended the author keywords from lesson one and have added a basic lesson for each karmic sign.



Aries Self. The impulsiveness of Aries is the karmic key. Aries must learn to overcome impatience and look before it leaps. Impulsiveness can be foolhardy and Aries must learn to choose its battles. Qualities of self-reliance, courage and initiative should be developed. Aries is so direct that it has a difficult time learning how to pace itself and properly utilize its energy. It must learn that others may not be as direct.

Lesson: Learn to control impulse and follow through.
Aries / Cardinal Fire / Spiritual birth
Hickey: untamed fire of impulse
Jocelyn: the will to be manifest
Jay: outgoing life



Taurus Values. Discrimination of the desire nature of the Taurus / Scorpio axis is the key. Be careful what you dream or want, because dreams can and do come true. You must learn to direct your desire because you can get whatever you want from the conditions or people of this house, simply by expecting it. You have the “faith of a farmer”.

Lesson: Learn to collect experience instead of things.
Taurus / Fixed Earth / Spiritual fertility
Hickey: freshly plowed earth of springtime
Jocelyn: spiritualized will
Jay: directed desire



Gemini Communicate. First, we learn to communicate. Then we must learn the “to whom”, “when”, and “if” of communication. Supposedly we can move mountains and metaphysically we can learn to do so. Unfortunately, the original concept does not include the part that mountains should not be moved indiscriminately. Communication is the key, but misuse is possible. Learn the difference between the sin of commission and the sin of omission; both are mis-communications. People of the house may have difficulty communicating.

Lesson: Communication of higher levels.
Gemini / Mutable Air / Spiritual law of opposites
Hickey: light, changeable breezes of early summer
Jocelyn: dualism and contradiction
Jay: dual consciousness

Cancer Feel. Emotional independence is the key. Empathy is good, but sympathy is not necessarily good. Emotional rapport for the problems of another is commendable, but emotional entanglement and dependency is not. Cancer is where you must learn to handle great waves of emotion. Dependency (yours or theirs) should not be encouraged - each should be able to stand on their own two feet. Strong family ties.

Lesson: emotional objectivity.
Cancer / Cardinal Water / Spiritual instinctual consciousness
Hickey: restless tides of the ocean
Jocelyn: metamorphosis
Jay: physical incarnation

Leo Create. Are you an expression of God, or are you God? Leo is where you can mistakenly act as the light instead of as a prism for the light. Do not let yourself be carried away with your importance and ego. Be self-assured, but allow God to shine through. Learn humility. Remember you are a drop of the ocean. You are a part of, but not the whole of, the ocean. Let go and let God. This is the objective principle of the God Man (Jay).

Lesson: Allow others to shine their light also.
Leo / Fixed Fire / Spiritual self-consciousness
Hickey: fire of the heart
Jocelyn: a galactic sounding harp
Jay: God-man, objective principle

Virgo Serve. This is the Celestial Virgin, the divine counterpart to the sacrifice of Pisces, the subjective principle of the God Man. Karmically, this is the end of personality lessons, the point of discrimination or purification of those lessons. This is dharma, or karma in the making. Creative service to others with willing acceptance of that service without resentment is key. Virgo demands perfection.

Lesson: Discernment not condemnation.
Virgo / Mutable Earth / Spiritual perfection
Hickey: womb of time, harvest
Jocelyn: the spiritual core, need for catharsis
Jay: God-man, subjective

69

♌

♍



Libra Relate. The only sign without a human symbol rules relating skills and relationships. Spiritual Libra must develop the higher essence of love, *spiral* - love for the pure joy of loving, expecting nothing in return, and not just circular love. Love must be given freely, without strings, without trying to change the other person. Unconditional love, and blind justice.

Lesson: Take the higher path.

Libra / Cardinal Air / Spiritual turning point / evolution

Hickey: high winds and storms, followed by calm

Jocelyn: balancing scales of justice, union

Jay: balance between physical and spiritual man



Scorpio Desire. The other half of the axis of desire. The emotional system will be purged in this lifetime in the matters of the house and its people. Whatever needs to be released or eliminated will surface. Scorpio must spiritualize its intense, compulsive and obsessive emotional urges and learn to share its strength, not force and enforce it.

Lesson: Share, do not impose.

Scorpio / Fixed Water / Spiritual death, resurrection, rebirth

Hickey: hidden, stagnant marsh waters to be reborn

Jocelyn: awakening, transmutation

Jay: key to discipleship



Sagittarius Aspire. The directed life of discipleship (Jay), your Soul seeks realignment with universal wisdom. On any cusp, the lone route may be best – non-interference with the people represented by the house and the route or methods used, possibly alone or lonely. You must understand their need to do what they must, and to do it their way.

Lesson: Search for your truth.

Sagittarius / Mutable Fire / Spiritual aspiration, super-conscious

Hickey: archer shoots arrow, knows not the destiny

Jocelyn: link of spiritual consciousness

Jay: directed life of discipleship

Capricorn Responsibility. A crisis in consciousness. Where you must absolutely learn responsibility to the people and matters of the house. You are responsible for and to your brother man. You hold the fault if you do not do all in your power to handle it properly. Expect the best from yourself here. The mountain itself, the “Christing”. Can hold position of authority, and may not be liked for the position.

Lesson: You are your brother’s keeper.
Capricorn / Cardinal Earth / Spiritual testing
Hickey: the mountain goat, climbing, solitary
Jocelyn: spiritualizing the physical nature
Jay: the Christ Consciousness

Aquarius You must learn to use objectivity, detachment, and tolerance in the matters and people of this house. Where you can feel you belong to or are one with the whole of humanity. House matters or people may act as catalysts towards change. If successful, this gives the choice of service now that s/he functions as a Soul.

Lesson: Be tolerant, especially of those who are intolerant.
Aquarius / Fixed Air / Spiritual liberation
Hickey: the clear crystal electric air of winter
Jocelyn: awaken the angel within man
Jay: choice of service, functioning as Soul

Pisces Universality. Teach by example, practice what you preach, be silent and demonstrate. Pisces assumes you have integrated the other eleven sign lessons and can now gestalt that knowledge and apply it with skill – a tall order! This is not about you. This is about oneness and universality. Feel the tie to all life and not just humanity. It is liberating. Serve or suffer – there is no choice. You must be all things to all people.

Lesson: Walk your talk, teach by example, integrate.
Pisces / Mutable Water / Spiritual renewal, absorption
Hickey: dustpan of the zodiac, serve or suffer
Jocelyn: the Trinity in manifestation
Jay: liberation, integration, serve – no choice



You may also read the planets as to dignity, detriment, fall and exaltation. The following are Jay's suggestions, which seem to be loosely based on their similar influence on natal chart placements. You can also pay attention to mundane or accidental dignity, detriment, exaltation or fall. (If the principle is universal, it should work in all applications. If not, the principle is not universal and is a personal theory.) I have not done much with this area to date.

Dignities are areas of strength where you have earned the right to project your will.

Detriments are areas of weakness not as easy to express, perhaps unfinished business.

Exaltations behave as benefits accrued, where you have developed skills or assets now usable.

Fall indicates weakness and flaws, possibly from prior misuse.

Aspects In a karmic chart, aspects are not energies to come, but the end result of prior use of this energy. Perhaps you have created strain. You are coming into the physical incarnation with these energies in the state you have achieved and will be reacting to them. As in natal, retrograde planets indicate this is not the first time you have worked this energy, but is a continuation of an ongoing lesson. Retrograde planets tend towards internalization. There are no interceptions as the karmic chart contains equal houses. The usual readings for major aspects can apply to the karmic chart, but be sure you are calling forth spiritual growth and lessons and not mundane or personality-based readings.

I use the same orbs for a karmic chart as I use for a natal reading – as usual, the closer the better! If you would like a refresher on orbs and aspecting, please refer to my website's numerous articles and my book (marilynmuir.net, *Astrology: the Symbolic Language*).

Conjunctions are aspects of blending and union. Sometimes union is easy (benefics), sometimes difficult (malefics), and sometimes mixed (malefics with benefics). Easy and difficult manifestations may take turns.

Oppositions are stress aspects, suggesting confrontation or a tug of war between the opposing energies. The implication is that of a face-to-face polarity. Which side are you taking in this experience? This is a window of opportunity to clearly see the other side. Some oppositions are harder than others, depending on the planets involved (see conjunctions above).

Squares usually manifest as internal tensions, invisible but potent “chips” on your shoulder. You may be blind to your personal chips, but they do exist. The karma implied could be self-inflicted.

Trines and Sextiles are more benefic (again depending on the planets involved), and supposedly trines are stronger. In my experience, sextiles are more productive than the somewhat lazy trines.

If you read them, *Parallels* act similar to conjunctions and contra-parallels are similar to oppositions.

Reading In my standard natal lessons, I show the planets to be the *what* of experience, the signs to be the *how* of experience, the houses to be the *where* of experience, and the aspects to be the *why* of experience. Karmically, the three most important chart points are:

- 1) the Karmic Ascendant for the overall Soul Mission,
- 2) the Karmic Midheaven, our Earth Mission, temptations and obstacles,
- 3) the polarity of Karmic Ascendant / Descendent for use in solving the problems encountered.

Adapting my natal reading method:

- 1) Read the spiritualized sign message on the
- 2) house cusp (higher manifestation for matters and people),
- 3) expressing the spiritual planetary principles
- 4) through the natal aspects as previously earned,
- 5) affecting the karmic houses of rulership
- 6) and the natal houses through occupation and rulership (pay particular attention to karmic ruler in natal chart).

As previously mentioned, the zodiac has two halves: outflow and inflow, evolution and involution. The first six signs learn through experiencing the lessons of personality. The last six signs learn through application in society. Specifically, Libra, Scorpio and Sagittarius learn by doing and practicing. Capricorn, Aquarius, and Pisces apply the lessons learned through responsibility, knowledge and service.

Note the Karmic Ascendant position in the natal chart. Note any changes in house occupation between the natal and the karmic charts.

The Karmic Ascendant near the natal Ascendant, within 5°, creates a strong presence or individual, and can produce leaders and teachers. It is considered to be a key karmic lifetime.

00° of any sign rising can create the usual complexity of a cuspal situation. Both signs seem to contribute to the lesson, the previous (earlier) sign (probably due to prior experience), and the actual sign as the person develops. 29° of any sign rising implies a completion of a sign lesson, potentially influenced by the cuspal sign to come.

I will suggest what I always do with my material. Using your own words on each subject (planets, signs, houses, aspects, and anything else that is useful), either write out 5" x 8" index cards, or photocopy selected pages of this workbook to cut apart and glue to index cards. I prefer you use your words to describe your personal understanding. (*© Please note that this material is copyrighted. This is permission to copy and paste portions of this workbook for your personal study and application, but not for any other purpose.*)

Calculate the Karmic Ascendant as instructed. Make two copies of the karmic chart you construct, one for you as reader and one to give to the client. Use your index cards to lay out the reading - first the house cards, then the sign cards (there are no interceptions as this is an equal-house chart), then the planet cards in the indicated houses. Move the planet cards as needed to read house rulership and effect. Use the aspect cards as needed, moving the planet cards to read each aspect. However the aspects color the planets involved, remember that coloring in turn affects any other aspects involving them.

Suggested reading and ephemerides:

Interpreting Lilith, Crossroads and Karmic Astrology by Delphine Jay

The Lilith Ephemeris by Delphine Jay, AFA (1900-2000)

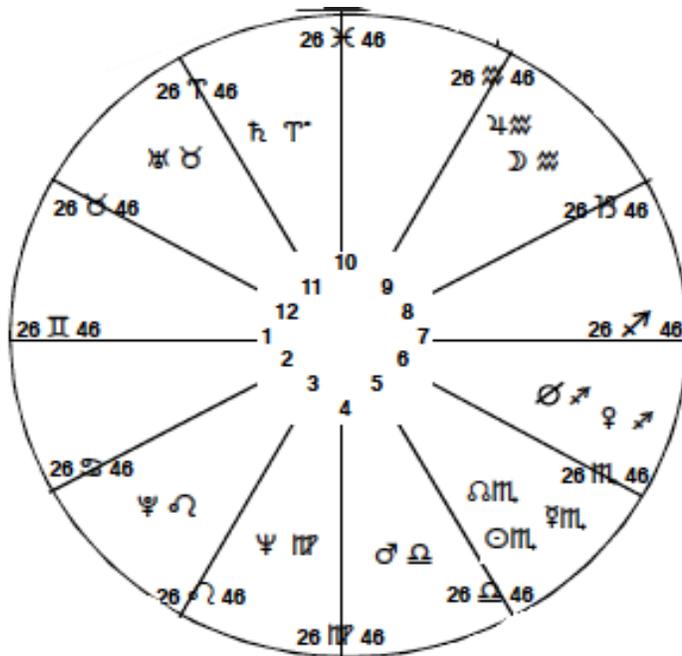
Dark Moon Lilith by Ivy Goldstein Jacobson (1860-1999)

Lilith Insight by Mae Wilson-Ludlam

Lilith Ephemeris 2000-2050 published by AFA

Note: Make a distinction between Dark Moon Lilith, Black Moon Lilith, and the asteroid Lilith, which are three separate positions.

The form on the last page of this lesson was originally learned in Delphine Jay's workshop. I adapted her concept for my own use, which really guided me through my early education on natal karmic astrology. She is no longer with us on this level, but I salute her contribution to my studies.



Brief Karmic Reading example for MM:

The *Gemini Karmic Ascendant* is hidden in the natal 12th, conjunct natal Ascendant within 2°, and signifying a key lifetime. Gemini on 1st are the past character traits to work on for Soul growth in this lifetime. Communication of higher levels is key. Learn about miscommunication through sins of commission and omission.

The karmic 2nd: talents, resources, character traits, spiritual possessions brought forward from the past are defined by Cancer. Emotional independence is key. I had experienced waves of emotion and developed strong family ties. Pluto in the 2nd indicates I experienced my karmic cesspool in my past lifetime and may have rationalized or copped out on some lessons as I was “trapped by desire”.

The karmic 3rd shows intuitive communication was developed or used in a creative (Leo) manner in the past, as well as the dramatic use of sounds or symbols for communication. For example, as a healer one of my skills was toning. Learning to be a prism for the light was part of my development. Leo’s drama will influence my communication skills in this lifetime. Neptune moved from natal 4th to karmic 3rd, indicating emotional or psychic development was inherent in my nature at birth. I learned to use psychic awareness to solve problems through meditation and faith.

The karmic Virgo 4th is my Soul's attitude towards Earth (Mother) as a home. Virgo is my karmic foundation (service) and my Soul is practically polarized in matter. Karmic ties to my own generation are practical and service-oriented (Virgo). Mars moved from the natal 5th cusp deep into my karmic 4th. I can rejuvenate, energize, and make happen to the people and issues of the 4th (my generation and my family) - aggressively at times.

The karmic 5th of creativity and self-expression shows karmic ties to my children (those of body and / or mind) and the younger generation. I must express Soul love (spiral), not just physical / material love, and to love and let go (which is tough where children are concerned). I developed creativity to bring forward for use in this lifetime. The Sun in Scorpio indicates strong identification with those children of creativity as well as obsession or compulsion. I must share my strength, not impose it. Mercury moved from natal 6th to karmic 5th emphasizing the communication function and the ability to tap into universal mind or our mental surroundings for connection / intuition. In Scorpio, Mercury reads between the lines for clues, listens with all senses, and hears what is not being said. It is very psychological.

The karmic 6th is Scorpio, the karmic house of the source of dis-ease, service, and the sowing of karma (dharma). My emotional system must be purged (karmic ruler in the 2nd where cop-out was possible in a past experience). My health may depend on my ability to share and not impose my strengths and abilities. Venus is tightly conjunct Dark Moon Lilith, too close to separate. The need for Venus to express spiritual spiral love is coupled with Lilith's representation of spiritual crisis with limited choice in the process. Something within me must "move up" to rebuild Soul qualities. I bought these sources of dis-ease with me and must address them now. Venus could indicate kidney or internal sexual organs as an area of dis-ease carried over into this lifetime.

The karmic 7th is Sagittarius. I "owe" Sagittarius, the way to balance my excesses. My karmic ties tend to be philosophical or religious in nature. Gemini accesses information and Sagittarius distributes it. For me, the lone route may be best. I must accept that people must do their own stuff their own way and practice non-interference (still working on that one).

The karmic 8th shows my state of imbalance and karmic debts to be Capricorn in nature. I am my brother's keeper. I must do all in my power to handle the talents and resources of others, and I may not be liked for what I do and am. Responsible activity is my key. The Moon moved from natal 9th to karmic 8th - emotional memories and deja vu will assist me and negative emotional memories will handicap me as I experience Soul

memory. Jupiter moved from natal 9th to karmic 8th, the mediator between cultures and creeds. Past experience will assist me in what I have chosen to do. Also the Moon, and retrogrades Pluto, Venus, Uranus, and Saturn will help me. With Moon and Jupiter in Aquarius, I must use objectivity, detachment and tolerance. This area of life can act as a catalyst for change and I may serve or function as a Soul in this area.

The karmic 9th shows my Soul's activities to reach God through my higher self. My spiritual pathway is Aquarian in nature. I may karmically encounter the spirituality or religion of others. Objectivity, detachment and tolerance are key as I belong to the whole of humanity. Evolution is a group trip. Again, I can experience the catalyst for change.

The karmic 10th is my Earth Mission, what I must do to fulfill and successfully complete my personal karmic mission. I must teach by example, practice what I preach, and demonstrate my universality. Somehow, I must be all things to all people. Pisces is a service sign, one to the masses. Saturn in the 10th represents experience as teacher on the highest turn of the wheel. I am my brother's keeper. Human evolution is a collective - we ultimately must progress together.

The karmic 11th is Aries - my ability to recognize my karmic links, to attract friendships, groups and association through which my Soul can work. Not all Souls that we know are incarnate and available to us. The links are available here. Not all wear white hats. Sometimes our greatest teachers are those who make us uncomfortable. Uranus in the karmic 11th means my Aries friends are direct, assertive, impulsive, and mavericks by ordinary description. They are one-of-a-kind types who must learn to pace themselves and follow through and may act as catalysts for change (which may be forced and not chosen).

The karmic 12th gives clues to the next important incarnation. There is no way to know if each incarnation is as important as any other. My clue is Taurus. Discrimination of the desire nature will be key. Since I can get what I want, selection and directed desire is smart. I will have to learn to collect experience and not "things". There is no planet in this karmic house, so my next lifetime is not a foregone conclusion unless I really screw up this one. So I may hide as previously mentioned. If I cannot be found, I may get a longer deep breath between incarnations. You know that Spirit will eventually find me. The concept of "hiding" from Spirit is really silly, but I do have moments when it seems like a good idea!

By the way, there is no such thing as a Great Karmic Board in the Sky deciding your personal fate. There are always highly developed consciousnesses that we call guides, teachers, angels or spiritual masters available for consultation, but responsibility is individual and your fate is between you and your Source.

How to read aspects, rulerships, retrogrades (one planet example only): Sun square Pluto, Sun square Moon, Sun opposed Uranus. Karmic ties exist between 5th and 2nd, 5th and 9th, and 5th and 11th by occupation; 3rd and 6th, 2nd and 5th, 5th and 9th by rulership.

Sun (Soul) in Scorpio (share, not impose) in karmic 5th (spiral love), ruling karmic 3rd (communication is key), Leo (be prism, not light), square (chip on shoulder) Pluto (karmic cop-out) in Leo (be prism, not light) in karmic 2nd (last important incarnation – been here, done that) ruling karmic 6th (dis-ease, dharma – do I want to do it again?).

Sun is also square Moon (deja vu and emotional ties) in Aquarius (catalyst for change, objectivity, tolerance) in karmic 8th (occult ties, karmic debts) ruling karmic 2nd (last important incarnation).

Sun is opposed Uranus (catalyst for change) in karmic 11th (evolving associations) ruling 9th of reaching for my spiritual pathway.

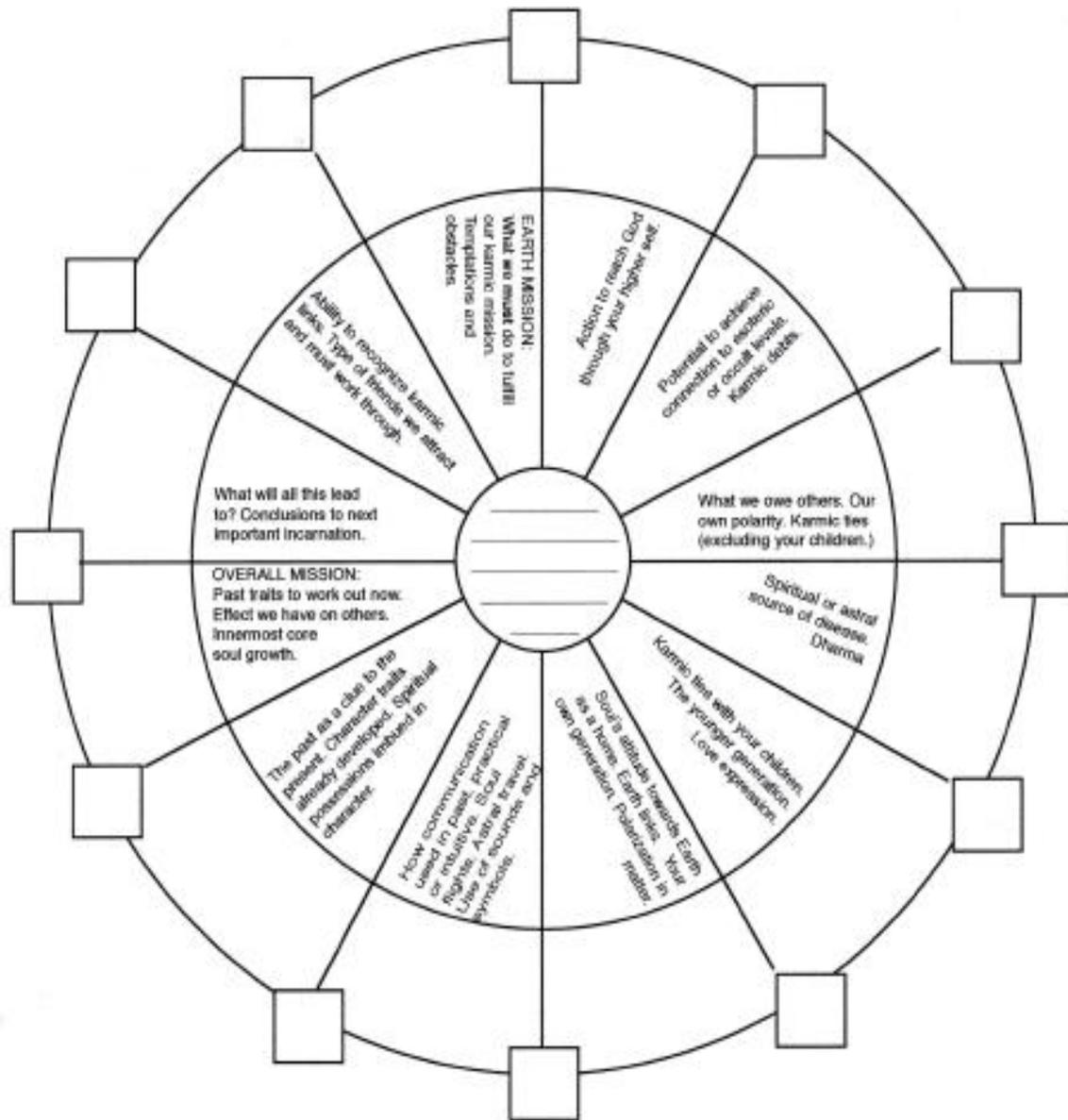
Uranus and Pluto are fully retrograde. Apparently, I have tried these lessons before.

This is a necessarily brief reading for the purpose of this lesson. None of you could conceivably be that interested in my life, but I just needed an example. Mine was a good as any other and does not invade anyone else's privacy. To complete the reading, you would work your way through the major aspects, including the rulerships, occupations, and retrogrades. Aspects are previously earned stages of development in a Soul chart. This chart represents a moment in time where we can freeze-frame our evolving Soul to aid our Personality in this lifetime.

Practice on your own chart and charts of those close to you (with their permission) so you can get quality feedback. Since the karmic level deals with abstraction, success simply means a sense of identification with the reading and eventually the ability to use the information to foster soul growth (another abstraction). Use any famous (or infamous) person whose history is well-known and documented. Use public records or biography / autobiography works. Here are one famous and two infamous charts you may find interesting for practice before you read lesson 3:

- ✓ John Barrymore per Encyclopedia: February 15, 1882, Philadelphia, PA, Noon
Per rectification by Helios Hotchener, family astrologer, corroborated by Llewellyn George, birth was February 14, 1882, Gemini rising (no degree given). This is not possible. Gemini Ascending occurred near noon. Noonmark gives 16 Gemini rising (center of sign). All dates and material garnered from the biography: *Good Night, Sweet Prince* by Gene Fowler, one of his best friends and confidants. Speculative! Rodden does have a C rating chart with extensive source notes.
- ✓ Adolph Hitler: April 20, 1889, Brunau, Austria, 48N 15, 13E03, 6:28 PM CET or 6:20 LMT (rectified by Astrologer T. Pat Davis from 6:30 PM)
Rodden shows 6:30 PM rated AA
Karmic Ascendant 3 Virgo 40, Dark Moon Lilith 13 Pisces 03
- ✓ Serial Killer Ted Bundy: November 24, 1946, Burlington, VT, 44N28.5, 73W12.4
10:35 pm EST (original helio info provided by Astrologer T. Pat Davis)
Rodden rates this AA. This chart is included in my Serial Killer Research project.
Karmic Ascendant 9 Sagittarius 58, Dark Moon Lilith 24 Leo 16

These actual charts are provided at end of Lesson 3 with their activations.



The first axiom a student of metaphysics learns is that for everything that exists on the visible plane, there is a non-physical form from which it is derived – the idea behind the thing. If the idea (non-tangible) did not exist, the visible object could not exist. If the physical counterpart to the idea should cease to exist, the invisible idea can create anew. For example, many snapshots can be created from one photographic negative.

Usually a natal chart is computed and read. It is the map of your life now, the soul level formalized into matter. But, the karmic chart underlies the natal the way a living hand underlies and shapes the glove of the personality. It is the *why* of the natal, the invisible idea, your individual essence, the *soul!* The karmic map out-pictures your soul at its then current stage of development as a result of its many stages of consciousness – the end product of what you have become as a result of what you have set into manifestation.

Your current lifetime, therefore, is the crystallization of the state of consciousness you had attained at the moment of birth, conditioned by your residual karma. (chart is Delphine Jay's concept)

Progressing the Karmic Chart

*Can the Karmic Chart be Progressed?
Casting the Progressed Karmic Chart
Prenatal Solar / Lunar Eclipses / Karmic Flip
Other Points: Prenatal Solar and Lunar Eclipses,
New and Full Moons, the North Node,
the Composite Planet Point, Dark Moon Lilith*

Can the Karmic Chart be progressed? In lesson one, we explored the concept of Soul development. In lesson two, we explored the concept of a personal karmic chart, the reasons why such a chart should exist and of what assistance the karmic chart might be as you thread your way through life. If the natal chart is valid, its progressions are valid. And so, if the karmic chart is valid, then the karmic chart should be open to progression. Let us examine the possibilities of progressing the karmic chart so we can resolve any question as to its validity. The question is: Is it possible to progress a karmic chart?

To recap: the Soul is the repository of all prior experience and is in a state of becoming, open to change and experience, and with a past that governs its present and a goal or mission that must also influence its present. The Soul, in order to progress and evolve on its way to completing its mission, sends a thread of itself into incarnation. This is what we call the personality, our physical self, existence and experience. We draw a sky map of that thread at the moment of incarnation and call it the natal chart. We watch the existence of that self, and its experience and evolution through the mechanism of the progressing (moving, evolving) chart. When we change perspectives for that chart, can we also examine it on the karmic or Soul level (the karmic chart)?

We explored whether the thread of personality was singular or multiple (stay in your comfort zone for now). We explored the difference between linear and continuum time (again, remain in your comfort zone for now). Once you are familiar with this material, test possibilities outside your assumed comfort zone. Stretch yourself, challenge your personal paradigms, grow into new concepts as you learn. Teach.

- ✓ Does the Soul wait for physical death to ingest all there is for it to know about our physical incarnation?
- ✓ Or, is the Soul in a continual state of learning?
- ✓ Is our Soul paying any attention to us as physical beings?
- ✓ Does our Soul operate independently of our personality? This, to me would foster or perpetuate a sense of separateness.
- ✓ Or does our Soul maintain a constant connection with our personality, consciously or unconsciously. Again, to me, this sounds more unitive in nature.

My ego likes the idea of my Soul paying personal attention to me on a regular basis. If I live 100 years and my Soul only pays attention at the moment of incarnation and the moment of death, I am very much alone in this existence. If I work steadily with my Soul, consciously or unconsciously, then my Soul is paying attention, guiding, tweaking this experience, and absorbing my experience on a somewhat regular basis. Either way, the Soul will get what it needs. Reunion is a given, and success of a lifetime is earned or failed. The Soul has eternity in which to experiment.

In the West, we tend to see the evolutionary process as a straight line from a lower form to a progressively higher form. This could be real or it could be our egos assigning the roles we think can be played. Other cultures see the possibility of moving between forms (transmigration). Your progress can be both forward and recessive. In modern parlance, you win some and you lose some. Sounds rather zig-zag. However, since the future is strongly based on the choices we make at each individual crossroad and moment in time, we could choose in error. We could give up the good fight and coast, or just blow it. We can also choose at that time to get back on the path to become as successful as possible in this incarnation. Is choice driven by free will or destiny?

Any straight line extended far enough into space will eventually curve back on itself and return to its source. This curving is due to the physical effects of inertia. Therefore, no matter where you are positioned on the line, whether it be in time, experience or awareness, you are always on a curving line, eventually returning to the "Allness" that is Source. The process outward from the Source is evolutionary. The process of return to the Source would then be involitional. Both are automatic. We are continually on a path, consciously or unconsciously, that must eventually return to the Source, whatever that is to you. Truth seekers choose to consciously make the trip while awake, aware and with personal cooperation. We seek enlightenment, which may not be a thunderclap experience. Instead, we may become gradually but progressively enlightened. The path is the process of personal evolution and the goal is never changing, despite the bumps we can encounter or create.

What happens if we fall off our path? Go back to basics. If the creative principle we call God was all that existed at the moment of Creation, God must have created out of Itself, out of all that existed at the moment, the Allness that is our Source. All that is, which tends to be more than we can imagine, is God. All paths must therefore exist within God. If you fall off your path, you must fall into God, perhaps onto another path within God. All of existence is contained within God. There is no place that God is not. The destination of all such paths and all such journeys is the return to the Source. God is the Source, the journey and the destination. We have infinity in both duration and experience. This is the only game in town!

As we explore the possibility of the progressing chart, the oversoul theory takes on more significance as we question just how much karma we are working out and from what source.

- ✓ Does the Soul send several threads of consciousness into existence simultaneously? Those who believe in this see the Soul as superior in awareness and capable of maintaining several life forms at once.
- ✓ Or does the Soul have only one thread in existence at any one time? Many of us like to believe this personality we inhabit is the only matter of importance to our personal Soul. That is our ego talking, but still may be true.
- ✓ If the Soul does incarnate multiple threads, do they influence each other's lives?
- ✓ Would these Soul threads be distinct from one another or intertwined?
- ✓ Are you working through karma incurred by simultaneous threads?
- ✓ Are your experiences similarly affecting other Soul threads?
- ✓ How do we learn the difference and how do we achieve karmic balance if we are responsible to and for each other?
- ✓ Can we meet, discuss and set a strategy to satisfy the karmic pattern?
- ✓ Do we have to get off the wheel simultaneously (die at the same time) or can we individually succeed?

Most of these questions are not answerable at this stage of awareness. While it is valuable to recognize that there may be alternative theories, do not let yourself get hung up in unanswerable conundrums. There is always more...

It is my personal theory that since the return to the Creator is essentially a personally unitive principle, the goal of physical existence seems to be to erase the sense of separation in order to experience spiritual union. It would seem to me that the Soul would get very bored if it only had one

thread on which to concentrate and did not learn anything until the moment of death. Nor is it sensible that the Soul would remain separated from our personalities. If this unitive principle is true, and we are able to see the state of the Soul at the moment of incarnation, we should be able to see our continuing Soul development by progressing our karmic chart.

Casting the Progressed Karmic Chart

By computer or by hand? Since the karmic ascendant is derived from the birth position of the Sun and Moon, it follows that the progressed karmic ascendant should be derived from the progressed positions of the Sun and Moon. There are several methods of determining progressed charts: 1) computer, 2) by hand to any date during the year, or 3) to the Adjusted Calculation Date (ACD).

1) Obviously, a computer-generated natal progressed chart to any date chosen is the easiest to cast and the most accurate. Progress the natal chart, then calculate the midpoint between the progressed Sun and Moon using the instructions in the lesson on the natal Karmic Ascendant.

2) For those of you who still do charting by hand, you can calculate the progressed Karmic Ascendant (equal house chart) by standard progressive techniques to any date chosen. If you are calculating to a random date, you could construct a complete progressed chart (planets, Ascendant, and Midheaven) and then construct the progressed Karmic Ascendant as you did with the natal.

3) What exactly is an ACD? If you are calculating the progressions by hand, it is easiest to progress the chart to the Adjusted Calculation Date, a date during any progressed year when the planets listed in the ephemeris are exact and require no adjustment. The ACD is favored because it is much easier to change to a key date in a year than to re-calculate each planet individually for multiple dates. You may also refer to the ACD listed as the PED (Progressed Ephemeris Date), which is just another term for the same procedure. Briefly:

Using a Midnight ephemeris: Determine how many hours and minutes of difference exist between the time standard at the birth position and Greenwich Mean Time (the time used in any ephemeris for the daily location of the planets). Note if the corrected hours and minutes are plus or minus Greenwich midnight.

- ✓ Divide the hours by two, which are months of difference.
- ✓ Divide the minutes by four, which are days of difference.
- ✓ Reverse the + or - as used for the GMT correction. If your corrected GMT is more than (+) the ephemeris GMT chosen,
- ✓ minus (-) month and day correction to Greenwich midnight position.
- ✓ If your corrected GMT is less than (-) the ephemeris GMT chosen, plus (+) month and day correction to Greenwich midnight position.

Again using my chart as example 1, and with a midnight ephemeris:

- ✓ I was born 7:33 pm EST 10/31/1938.
- ✓ EST is 5 hours behind the time at Greenwich England, so you add that 5 hours to the time given at Greenwich.
- ✓ 7:33 pm + 5 hours = 12:33 am the next day (11/1/38).
- ✓ That would be 24 hours, 33 minutes past midnight of 10/31/38 or 33 minutes past midnight of 11/01/38 (easier).
- ✓ There are no hours to divide in this example.
- ✓ 33 minutes divided by 4 = 8 1/4 days difference. + or - ?
- ✓ The 33 minutes were plus to midnight Greenwich 11/1/38, so the 8 1/4 days must be minus to the date of 11/1/38 (reversed).
- ✓ The ACD date for my chart, using a midnight ephemeris is: 11/1/1938 minus 8 1/4 days (round off to 8 days).
- ✓ Borrow a month to easily do the subtraction (October = 31 days) gives a date of October 23, 1938 ACD midnight ephemeris.
- ✓ Noon ephemeris (see sidebar for example): If using a noon ephemeris the date would be shifted back 6 months to 4/23/38, (12 hours difference in ephemerides, divided by 2).

Proof your work Look at your natal Sun degree and minute. It should be positioned closest to the Greenwich date chosen. E.g., my natal Sun is 7 Scorpio 55:36, 33' past Greenwich midnight on 11/1/38, *reverse*, the position listed in the ephemeris is just prior to my birth (10/23/38). For this example, the planet positions given in the ephemeris for 11/1/38 are accurate without need for correction for Oct 23, 1938. This key date may be used for the progressions for each succeeding progressed year for this chart. The beauty of the ACD is that it must only be calculated once and then applied to each progressing year's planetary positions right out of the midnight (or noon) ephemeris.

**Example 1 using
Noon Ephemeris**
7:33 pm EST
+5:00 hr to GMT
12:33 am
+12 hr noon-mid
+33' to noon
12 ÷ 2 = 6 month
33' ÷ 4 = 8 da
10 / 31/38 birth
-6m 8d =
4 / 23 /38 ACD
for 10/31/38 list

**Example 2 using
Mid Ephemeris**
10:35 pm EST
+5:00 hr to GMT
15:35 or
3:35 am GMT +
day after birth
3hr ÷ 2 = 1m 15d
35' ÷ 4 = 9 d
birth 11/ 25/46
-1m24d
ACD=10 /01/46

Chart Construction Once the progressed karmic ascendant has been determined, the balance of the house cusps are placed using the equal house system as given. Drop the progressed planets into the chart by house, sign and degree. Remember that karmic equal houses do not allow for natal interceptions - they disappear. These rules apply to either a yearly or a monthly progressed karmic chart. Natal Karmic Ascendant rules are then applied: use the sign position forward from the Sun in a male's chart, the sign position forward from the Moon in a female's chart.

Drop the progressed planets in place. If you have used the ACD, the planets do not have to be re-calculated unless you choose to do fine work for a particular date during that progressed year. The only substantial motion would be the progressing Moon itself (1° per month). Should you need to do that, to be truly accurate, use standard progression math. Calculate the distance traveled in one year for each planet and divide by twelve for the smaller monthly motion. To correct for days, divide the monthly motion by thirty days. In most instances, this interpolation of small motion could be guesstimated unless you are preparing for or taking a test.

Actual vs Mean Motion The Sun and Moon progress at differing rates, so the progressing chart reflects a continual state of change. Adding together the progressed Sun and progressed Moon positions as we did in the birth karmic chart and dividing that sum by two gives the accurate progressed karmic ascendant axis by degree and a pair of opposing signs (polarity). The Sun actually travels at the rate of 57' to 1°2' per day, with a mean (average) motion of 1°. Dividing this 1° (60') by 12 months equals 5' of arc per month. The Moon actually travels at the rate of 11°57' to over 15° per day. The average (mean) motion of the Moon is approximately 13° per progressed year, or 1°5' per month of progression. You can use mean (average) motion to interpolate the moving Karmic Ascendant for other dates during any progressing year. Mean motion would be 7° per year, 35' per month, 1+° per day. Do not use mean motion for the main (year) part of the calculation as it is approximate, close but not necessarily accurate. It is far too much work by hand to do monthly or daily, so I would use mean motion for less critical work. If you were ever to sit for a test, always choose accuracy.

Accuracy Do you want to set a progressed karmic chart yearly and try to eyeball the changes that take place moment to moment? Do you want to set a progressed karmic chart monthly in order to be more sensitive and accurate with house cusp changes and delineation – mini charts? Just how much of this is of value to you? I feel it is important for you to understand that it can be done and how to do it. If you decide that it does not contribute

enough insight to warrant the work involved, you can always drop it. It is important that you know how because ignorance is never your friend. Choose the method that provides you with the best information without losing accuracy. Choose how far you want to develop this by the generation of useful information. Do not do more than is necessary and useful unless you are studying for or taking a test where such accuracy is necessary.

Activations Progressions, directions and transits to the natal chart reflect the changing patterns of energy and involvement in the person's physical experience. As always, impact is dependent on whether or not there is a natal promise. No natal promise, no heavy impact. Do not promise a lottery win on a beneficial transiting aspect unless the natal chart promises such possibility. Do not predict dire results on a malefic transitional aspect unless the natal promises that possibility. Having said that, progressed positions and aspects can indicate newly operational promises but are just not as strong as natal positions. Remember all progressions, directions and transits, including eclipses, are temporary in nature. The initializing potential or intent is shown in the natal chart – the originating pattern.

One more thing: if you develop a skill by progression, you will retain that skill once the progression moves on. If you were to study to be an attorney as your life and chart progress, you would still be an attorney once that progression moved on. You can grow and it shows in your progressions, but do understand the difference in strength between the natal and progressed aspects.

The progressed karmic chart indicates evolutionary progress for the Soul past the point of physical incarnation (natal), not the physical level. You must always maintain this mindset as you read the progressing karmic chart to see if it has validity and helps us to understand what is happening in terms of Soul evolution, not physical experience on an earthly basis. More than likely, the progressions, directions and transits that occur in the natal also apply to the karmic. A final conclusion is beyond my research at the moment, but perhaps you will explore this once you have grasped the basics. IF the activations mentioned do trigger or apply to the progressed karmic chart, the reading should reflect spiritual, and not just physical, development. This would have to be researched through many charts to prove or disprove its validity. I maintain that an astrological principle must hold true through multiple and diverse applications to prove that it is not just a personal theory.

Through multiple workshops and practice with live classes, we not only validated that the progressed karmic chart worked, but that it progresses at approximately 35'± per month, and that the planets progress normally... and more. We verified that the Karmic Ascendant progresses at the rate of approximately 7° per year. Accurately constructed charts impressively showed timing of events. Remember the Karmic Ascendant, both natal and progressed, is a constructed point and not a physical point in the sky. It's amazing that the constructs made so many timely hits.

Aspects In practice, progressed karmic angles aspecting natal placements gave the most definitive statements, with progressed karmic angles to progressed planets running second. Much to my surprise, when the karmic chart angles connected with natal placements, specific events occurred in the person's life. Hits were not limited to just attitudinal or consciousness changes. Also, there were progressed karmic angle aspect connections to natal placements in the charts of others who were closely connected, such as a child. Tight orbs were used, preferably exact or less than 1°. Could karmic angles have application for rectification purposes? Research needed! Examples from my own Karmic progressions:

- ✓ P KA (Progressed Karmic Ascendant) square N (Natal) Saturn: grandfather died
- ✓ P KA conjunct N Pluto: appendicitis (dangerous)
- ✓ P KA square N Sun: birth of sister (square = sibling rivalry?)
- ✓ P KA opposite N Jupiter: chose Catholic church over Protestant
- ✓ P KA conjunct N IC: stage performing start (sing / dance five years)
- ✓ P KA conjunct N Mars: Mother terminally ill
- ✓ P KA conjunct N Sun: graduated, out into world on own
- ✓ P K Dec conjunct P (Progressed) Uranus: sudden marriage (five days)
- ✓ P K Dec conjunct N Uranus: moved NY to Hawaii (military influence)
- ✓ P K IC conjunct N Moon: same as above - moved NY to Hawaii
- ✓ P KA conjunct N Mercury: 1st daughter born (exact minute – Virgo)
- ✓ P K IC conjunct N Jupiter: moved back, Hawaii to NY
- ✓ P K Dec conjunct N Venus: 2nd child born (Libra Asc)
- ✓ P KA trine N Moon: 3rd child born (Cancer Moon)
- ✓ P K IC conjunct N Mars: 4th child born (Aries Moon)
- ✓ P K IC conjunct N Sun: separation / divorce
- ✓ P KA conjunct N Node: father died

These are actual events in one person's life, not just changing states of consciousness, indicating that lifetime events very definitely contribute to the evolving state of the Soul. Not all karmic hits have events that I remember. Something probably occurred, but since I do not recall them and both parents are deceased, the hits are lost to me for verification purposes. They are not irrelevant; they are merely unknown.

Please know that while this is my personal example because I can verify the aspects easily, this verification process occurred through multiple karmic astrology classes, each with multiples of students.

Much later than this early research, I did another research project on the experience of coma in a chart. I found several timed charts of coma victims, found the history for each and have written another workbook on that research. What I learned from that project corroborated the use of progressions and transits for natal and for karmic charting. If nothing else, it verified the process and results from the earlier research. Not only could I see the karmic implications of long-term comas but I also could see the future influencing the past, and that was quite a surprise. You will have to read that workbook for details.

Other Points

As part of the research project I did on karmic charting, I added the positions of the Prenatal Solar and Lunar Eclipses, the Prenatal New and Full Moons, the North Node, the composite planet points, and the position of Dark Moon Lilith. I also checked to see if the Karmic Ascendant interacted with significant fixed stars. Example:

- ✓ P K Dec conj Caput Algol (fixed star): major marital crisis

In particular, Lilith, the Node and the composite planet point showed up significantly in the progressions.

Dark Moon Lilith As described in the previous lesson, DMLilith positions are easy to calculate. Computer calculated ephemerides are available from 1900 to 2050. Older ephemerides are available as previously described. Lilith's position is speculative at best within the daily listing. It's what I call a fudge factor because it is not usually interpolated for time of birth. DMLilith moves at 3°2' per day, always direct. Once you get the natal, use 3°2' per year (day for a year) as a reasonable progressed position or use the ephemerides to calculate the new position using the method as previously described.



I have discussed the placement of DMLilith. From my research notes on my personal chart, here are a few examples of progressed to natal:

- ✓ P Lilith oppose N Saturn: mother died
- ✓ P Lilith square N Uranus: miscarriage
- ✓ P Lilith conjunct N MC: cancer scare (not cancer)
- ✓ P Lilith oppose N Sun: chose solitary path, ended relationship access

Prenatal Solar / Lunar Eclipses

My Astrologer friend, Karen McCoy, and her co-writer, Jan Spiller, wrote *Spiritual Astrology: Your Personal Path to Self Fulfillment*, a book on prenatal solar and lunar eclipses. I was Karen's first proofreader for her manuscript. Curious, I included both the solar and lunar Prenatal Eclipses for my personal karmic chart. There were two specific karmic hits:

- ✓ P KA conjunct Prenatal LE: birth of first daughter
- ✓ P KA conjunct Prenatal SE: birth of first son

The Solar Eclipse is a grand-daddy new moon. The Lunar Eclipse is a grand-daddy (mommy?) full moon. Much Solar Eclipse material may be applied to the new moon and Lunar Eclipse material to the full moon, but as a more subdued, behind-the-scenes backdrop to experience, and perhaps not causal.

The Prenatal Solar and Lunar Eclipse points are determined by looking up the Solar and Lunar Eclipses immediately prior to (not past) birth. The Sun *projects* the life force and the Moon *reflects* that life force. It is postulated that these eclipses (interruptions in the flow of energy between the Sun, Moon and Earth) affect the sheath (aura) of the Earth and allow for passage of souls in and out of the earth plane. If so, these points would affect huge numbers of births and may show activation by karmic angle or other activators.

New Moon The Prenatal New Moon occurs at the sign, degree and minute of the New Moon prior to birth. Occasionally a person is born right on or just after the New Moon so the pre-natal New Moon will be very close to the birth (natal) Sun and / or Moon. This degree can be very sensitive, yet unknown to the individual or their astrologer if natal planets do not occupy that degree. Unless you were born on a New Moon, which defines the seed moment, the New Moon prior to birth creates a sensitive point in your natal chart that can be activated much as any other sensitive point is activated. If you were born exactly on the New Moon, look no further. You have the seed point and your Solunars would occur every thirty years. If you were not born on the New Moon, look at the degree of the New Moon prior to your birth to determine the nature of the stage set by the planting of the seed at that New Moon.

Prior to your thirtieth year, you would experience a Progressed New Moon (Solunar), and another stage is set for the next thirty-year cycle. This seeding is repeated in thirty-year increments until you leave the stage (death). All the points remain sensitive – you own what the progressions bring to you permanently. Evolutionary progress does not disappear when the chart progression moves on.

Full Moon Similarly, the Solunar Full Moon can have a profound impact. While the New Moons plant the seed, the Full Moons bring experiences to full light and potency. Once the Moon has completed the Full Moon aspect, it starts decreasing in light, even in a progressing chart! The experience turns to dissemination and distribution, eventually giving way to clearing the deck for the next cycle, which begins at the next New Moon. The New Moon is seeding. The Full Moon is culmination. For those who are awake and aware of their spiritual development, the experience can have impact. For the majority of humanity who are asleep and unaware, it slips by unnoticed. I have not researched this as yet. Your turn!

**Marilyn's
Solunar Returns**

Prenatal:
29 Lib 17

Age 22:
SE 29 Sco 2

Age 52:
29 Sag 14

Age 82:
29 Cap 36

(All 29° including
my natal
Ascendant
at 28 Gem 45)

Solunar Conjunction or Return An unusual karmic pattern occurs at the time of the progressed Solunar conjunction. What is a Solunar conjunction, loosely (perhaps not accurately) referred to as a Solunar Return? Not many astrologers seem to be aware of the Solunar conjunction, which can occur only once every thirty years. This is *not* a Solar Return nor a Lunar Return. When the progressed Moon catches up to the progressed Sun by conjunction, this is a progressed New Moon aspect that can be termed solunar. The New Moon is the moment when the seed for potential growth is planted for the next thirty- (day for a year) year progressing cycle. Studying the nature of that seed in the chart will educate you as to the unfolding of the thirty-year cycle at hand. The Solunar Return is a stage setter, much as the Saturn return or the Progressed Lunar Return sets a stage. This can create an extraordinarily strong, new sensitive point for the chart. It is one that would not necessarily have existed prior to that moment, a degree that would also not previously have been aspected. This new sensitive point may account for some activations that do not seem to be visible by ordinary methods (such as transits, progressions, directions, eclipses, etc.).

✓ P KA conjunct prenatal Solunar Return: attack/robbery

Karmic Flip Something peculiar happens to the progressed karmic chart at the moment of the progressed Solunar conjunction. At the moment the progressed Moon completes its applying conjunction to the progressed Sun, and moves ahead of it (now separating), the Karmic Ascendant flips itself to the opposite side of the existing karmic chart by degree, minute, and sign polarity. Remember, the Karmic Ascendant is the midpoint ahead of the Sun in a man's chart, and ahead of the Moon in a woman's chart. When the progressing Moon is behind the progressing Sun zodiacally in a male chart, the midpoint used as the Karmic Ascendant is the one ahead of the Sun. Once the Moon passes the Sun and is ahead of it zodiacally, that midpoint flips across the chart from its current location in order to remain ahead of the Sun zodiacally. The Karmic Ascendant would then be located closely in front of (leading) the progressing Sun. *Speculation: the word "leading" could be metaphorically important here. If the Karmic Ascendant in a chart is "leading" the Sun, the metaphor could be that karma is lighting the path for the progressing self-identity or Soul development.*

In a woman's chart, the Karmic Ascendant is the midpoint always ahead of the Moon. Once the Moon passes the Sun, the Karmic Ascendant must flip to the sign polarity, retaining the degree and minute, in order to be located in front of (leading) the Moon. Degrees and minutes of position are calculated the same, but the sign polarity reverses. *Speculative metaphor this time: the karma is lighting the path for the progressing emotions.*

Think of what this means. As a person evolves through his lifetime, his Karmic Ascendant cannot traverse the whole of the zodiac, but is limited to a shifting semi-circle on a thirty-year cycle. For example: The new moon just prior to my birth was at 29 Libra. My natal Karmic Ascendant is 27 Gemini (rounded off), and progressed to 29 Scorpio. Due to my solunar conjunction at age 22 (at 29 Scorpio) my Karmic Ascendant flipped back across the chart to 29 Taurus. It then progressed all the way back through Scorpio and on to 29 Sagittarius at the time of my new solunar conjunction in July of 1989.

The progressing Sun, Moon and, therefore, Karmic Ascendant were conjunct. I was sitting on a bench in a park near my home awaiting that moment as part of my research and I got very light-headed to the point of nearly falling off the seat. At that moment, the Karmic Ascendant flipped back to 29 Gemini (Sagittarius' polarity and my natal ascendant) and began its trek through the zodiac again. This time the progressing Solunar pairing would travel to 29 Capricorn and the Solunar return would cause the Karmic Ascendant to shift to 29 Cancer circa mid-May, 2019. Since we are dealing with thirty-year cycles, three or four additional sensitive degrees can be produced over a lifetime (one just before birth, plus two or three more cycles, depending on length of life).

Composite Planet Point During my 40+ years of astrological research, I played with a composite point constructed by adding the zodiacal ° and ' of each of the natal planets. There are two ways to reduce this and you get two different points; both seem useable. Once both were constructed, I placed them in various research projects to see if they were valid.

Math: Using the table provided in lesson two, convert each planet's position to zodiacal degrees and minutes. Add each column separately (see diagram).

- ✓ Method 1: divide by 10 to obtain the average and convert answer back into sign position.
- ✓ Method 2: reduce by 360° circles until remainder can be converted to single sign.

**Marilyn's
Composite point**

☉ 217°56'
 ☽ 315°36'
 ♀ 231°09'
 ♁ 244°54'
 ♂ 184°16'
 ♃ 322°40'
 ♅ 12°50'
 ♁ 46°07'
 ♃ 172°31'
 ♀ 121°31'
 1864°331' =
 1869°31' =

1) ÷10 = 186.9°
 6 Libra 57
 conjunct natal
 Mars

2) reduce by 360°
 residual is
 9 Gemini 31

In my personal chart, 6 Libra 57 and 9 Gemini 31 are my potential composite points:

- ✓ P KA conjunct N composite 9 Gem 31: 1st marital separation
- ✓ P KA sextile N composite 9 Gem 31: final separation
- ✓ P KA conjunct N composite 6 Lib 57: Mother died
(conjunct natal Mars and 5th cusp, death house of 10th house parent)

Interesting! This is not even a “real” point, just a concept and construct. More research needed!

Outer Planets Since the outer planets make little movement by progression, you need exact aspects to give much effect. Ordinarily, the year a natal aspect becomes exact by progression will signal the culmination or resolution of that aspect. As that perfected aspect moves on, it is in a separating and distributive posture and the experiences now come from the residual of the applying activation. In addition, the year a progressing outer planet changes signs or even houses can offer a glimpse into the nature of that outer planet. This might be difficult to translate to a karmic interpretation. Again, more observation and research are necessary, but the karmic implication does exist.

North Node Observations by many astrologers will need to be made as to whether the mean or true Node is more valid. For you, this can determine whether to progress by mean (average) or true motion. Both are available in computer charts and ephemerides. I have not spent enough time on this piece of research. Your turn! We will do more with the North Node in the Retrogrades and Reincarnation and the Nodal axis lessons.

Other Points and Bodies

Make a distinction in your mind between sensitive points and physical bodies. Physical bodies have mass, location and energy to contribute to the chart. Points do not have a physical location or presence, but are points of sensitivity in a chart. They work, but differently than bodies. Bodies both give and receive. In my experience, points tend to receive only.

- ✓ Certain Galactic Points, such as the center of the Galaxy (27 Sag 04 in 2015), the center of the Super Galaxy (2 Lib 00 in 2015), pulsars, quasars or major fixed star positions, could indicate experiences that go beyond ordinary personal evolution.
- ✓ Midpoints, Solstice points, Arabian parts, Uranian or trans-Neptunian planets, etc. could be activated. The list could be endless and overwhelming. Uranian Astrology would be your best research source for some of these subjects.

Unless these additions give accurate, consistent information, you would have to draw the line somewhere in terms of the work involved. However, you could try them out and not just discard them through ignorance. They could be valuable to you in some way. This is new territory. Research it, but make it prove itself in not just one chart, but many. I'd be interested in hearing your conclusions.

The best galactic material I have encountered is available from Astrologer Philip Sedgwick. I have taken several classes from him over the years and would be more than willing to take a few more. His webpage is <https://www.philipsedgwick.com/>

Galactic Black Holes

motion: 1° = 72 years

Center of Milky Way Galaxy

1950: 26 Sagittarius 9	1980: 26 Sagittarius 34
2000: 26 Sagittarius 51	2020: 27 Sagittarius 08

Center of Local Super Cluster

1950: 1 Libra 5	1980: 1 Libra 30
2000: 1 Libra 47	2020: 2 Libra 04

Progressing Return to Natal We have noted that it is possible for the progressed Karmic Ascendant to reasonably conjunct the natal Karmic Ascendant during the lifetime of the individual (more than once). This might be 1) an activation or event specifically regarding soul growth, or 2) a re-affirmation of the Soul's intent, or 3) what is your theory? It would be interesting to follow this line of reasoning. Again, new territory needing research!

Marilyn's
symbols



Karmic Snapshots Progressing karmic examples are provided on the following pages in this lesson plus there are two progressing karmic worksheet masters for your study.

The Famous: John Sidney Blythe aka John Barrymore

The Infamous: Adolph Hitler and Ted Bundy

The Ordinary: My personal chart and that of my deceased mother

References and suggested reading:

- ✓ *Interpreting Lilith* by Delphine Jay, (Ephemeris programmer: Michael Munkasey)
- ✓ *Lilith Ephemeris 2000-2050* by Delphine Jay, (programmer: Michael Munkasey)
- ✓ *Spiritual Astrology: Your Personal Path to Self Fulfillment* by Karen McCoy / Jan Spiller
- ✓ Galactic material from Philip Sedgwick

The Famous

John Sidney Blythe aka John Barrymore

Encyclopedia gives 2/15/1882

2/14/1882 late afternoon to early evening*, Gemini Asc, no ° given,
per rectification corroborated by Llewellyn George

(*this is not possible since Gemini Ascendant occurred near noon)

Philadelphia, PA

(I used noonmark for 16 Gemini rising at noon)

Selected events:

9/?/1910 marriage #1

8/?/1920 marriage #2

6/16/1921 renunciation of guardianship of daughter born one month earlier (around 5/16/21)

11/24/1928 marriage #3

5/?/29 severe duodenal ulcer

4/8/30 birth of daughter #2

9/27/30 severe gastric hemorrhage

6/?/32 birth of son John

9/16/35 signed for divorce

(10/9/35 actual divorce decree)

11/7 or 8/1936 marriage #4

12/31/36 major marital battle

11/27/40 divorce #4

5/29/1942, died 10:20 PM

Aspects:

P KA oppose N Sun/Venus

P Lilith square N Mercury

P KA conj N Saturn

P Lilith oppose N Moon

P KA conj N Neptune

P Lilith conj N KA

P KA conj N Moon

P Lilith square N Saturn

P KA sext N Neptune/Uranus

P KA sext N Jupiter

P KA sext N Pluto

P KA square N Jupiter

P KA oppose N Sun/Venus

P KA trine N Pluto/ squ N Mars

PKA quincunx N Nep/Pr Sat

P Lilith conj N Uranus

P Lilith recently oppose N Lilith

Source:

Good Night, Sweet Prince by Gene Fowler (biographer, close friend)

The Infamous

Adolph Hitler

April 20, 1889 6:28 PM CET (rectified from 6:30 PM)

Brunau, Austria 48N15, 13E03

KA 3 Vir 40 Lilith 13 Pis 03

Partial (sampling) events:

1900 brother died, date unknown

1/3/1903 tyrant dad unexpect died

12/21/1907 mother died, cancer

8/3/1914 joined army, World War I

10/13/1918 Gassed, blindness

temporary voice loss

11/11/1918 Germany surrendered

7/?/1921 elected Chairman Nazi party

11/9/1923 plot overthrow government

4/1/1924 convicted of treason

1928-29 niece Geli lover, lived together

9/18/1931 niece Geli commits suicide

1/30/1933 elected Chancellor Germany

3/23/1933 Dictator

3/12/1938 Annexed Austria

3/15/1939 Took Czechoslovakia

9/1/1939 World War II began

invaded Poland at Danzig

4/9/1940 attacked Norway / Denmark

5/10/1940 attacked Holland

6/21/1940 France surrendered

6/22/1941 Soviets invaded Germany

12/7/1941 USA declared war

5/13/1943 Axis surrenders in Africa

7/10/1943 Italy refused to fight

6/4/1944 D-Day

4/28/1945 Mussolini killed

4/30/1945 married Eva Braun

then both committed suicide

Aspects:

P KA conj P Merc

P Lil squ n N Node opp N Ura

P Lilith conj N Dec/Merc

P Lilith trine N Moon/Jup conj

P KA conj N KA and Pleiades

P Lilith square N Lilith

P KA to squ N Moon/Jup conj

P KA conj N Asc, P Lil N Ura

P KA oppose Solunar Ret

P KA square N Saturn

Solunar ret, P Lil conj n N Nod

P Lil square N Ura

P Lilith squ N Merc/Asc/Dec

PKA and P Lilith conj N Saturn

P Lilith square N Mars/Venus

same

P KA conj N KA

P Lilith sextile N Uran

P KA oppose N Lilith

P KA square N Composite

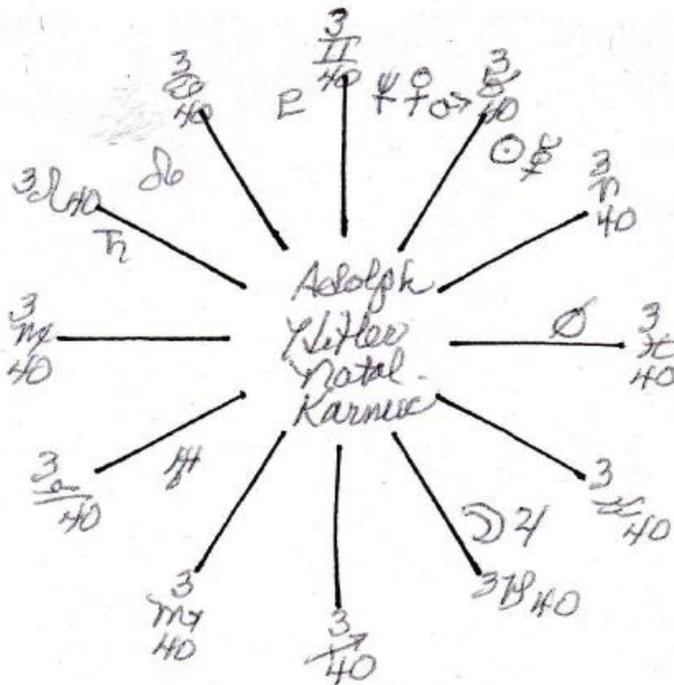
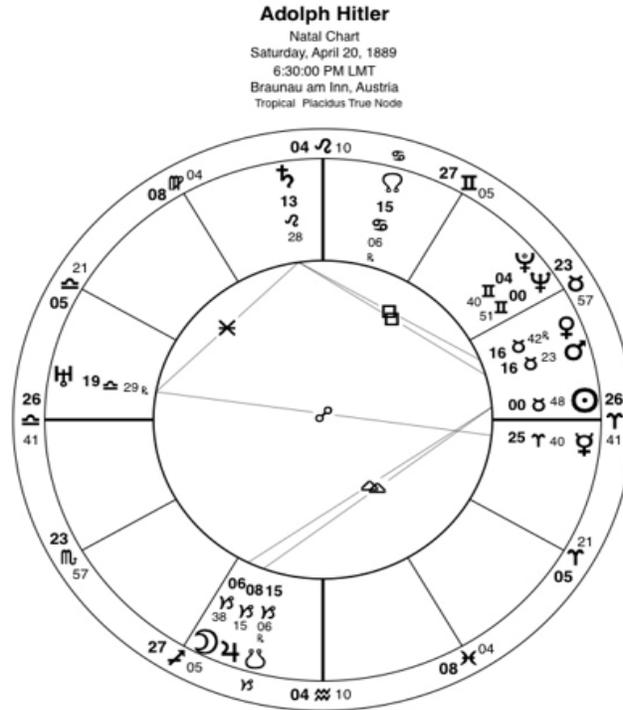
P Lilith trin N Sun, squ N Nep

P Lilith square N Plu and

P Lilith conjunct N KA

Source: ©T Pat Davis, helio research

With N Saturn in the N karmic chart, Adolph Hitler will re-incarnate, and perhaps he already has. Napoleon and Hitler were considered to be the first and second anti-Christ. I would expect an anti-Christ to have some history. Could it be the same soul incarnating to do a specific teaching job on humanity or because the soul has a great deal to work through?



The Infamous

Theodore Robert Cowell Bundy

11/24/1946 10:35 pm EST

Burlington, VT 44N28.5 73W12.4

KA 10 Sag Lilith @24 Leo 16 conj Asc

Source: ©T Pat Davis, helio research, much more info provided

Events and activations/aspects:

(Slightly different format because of multiple closely associated activations.)

Bundy claimed that overwhelming urges began in 1964 and also claimed murders began in 1966 (discounted by authorities). Aspects in karmic charts lead me to believe they did begin '66-'67. 1/4/1974 is officially thought to be first murder and beginning of series. Additional murders attributed to Bundy (uncertain):

1/31/74, 3/12/74, 4/17/74, 5/6/74, 6/1/74, 6/11/74, 7/14/74 (2),
8/12/74, 10/2/74, 10/18/74, 10/31/74, 11/8/74 (2), 1/12/75,
3/15/75, 4/6/75, (incarcerated part of 75-78), 1/15/78 (5), 2/9/78

P Lilith 16 Sco 41 conj IC on 1/4/74 moving to 29 Scorpio by 2/78.

P Lilith also squared N Mercury, conj N Venus and N Mercury,
squared N Lilith and N Asc. during this 4-year crime spree.

P KA was 23 Gemini 1/4/74, moving to 1 Can 7 before flipping to
Capricorn on the Solunar Return, then progressing to 19 Cap 30
by 2/78 during this 4-year crime spree.

Incarcerations:

8/16/75 arrested and suspected, released

10/1/75 arrested for kidnapping

3/1/76 convicted for kidnapping

6/7/77 escaped

6/13/77 recaptured

12/31/77 escaped

2/12/78 stole car

2/15/78 arrested

7/1/79 first trial began

7/12/79 acted as own attorney

7/24/79 guilty of 2 first degree murders

7/31/79 sentenced to electric chair

1/24/89 electrocuted 7:16 am Starke, FL

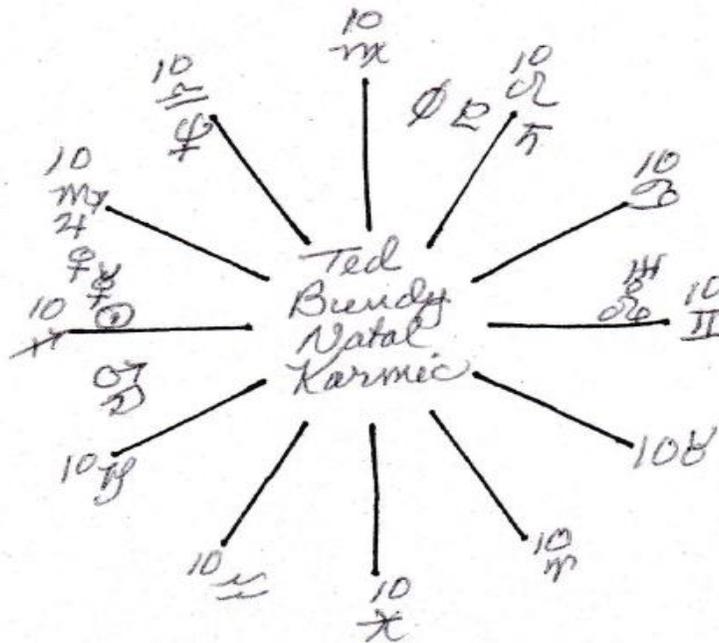
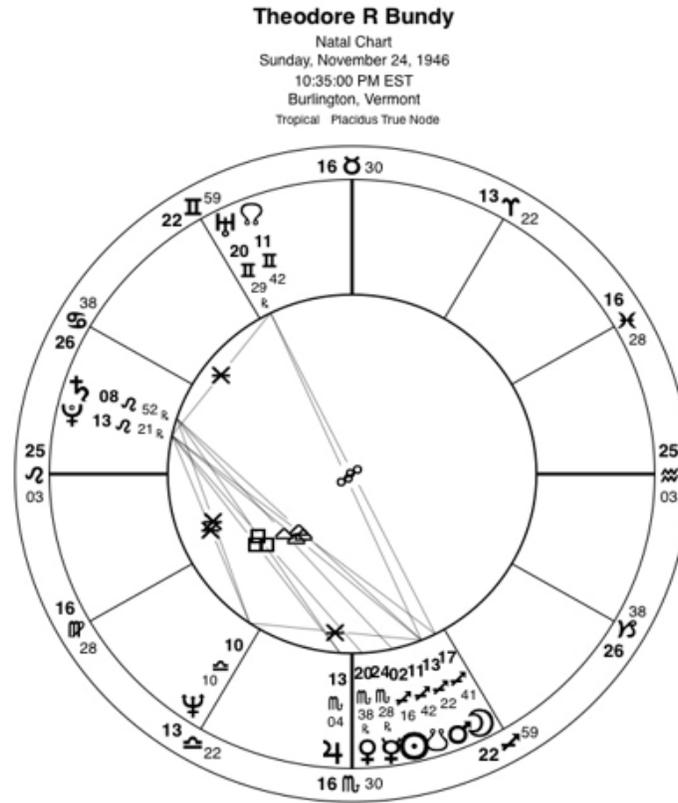
P KA 8 Ari 52 exactly conj N Saturn

P Lilith 2 Cap 03 opposed P Moon

P MC on Galactic Center

With Natal Karmic 12th loaded (Sun, Mercury, Venus, and Jupiter), Ted Bundy will reincarnate, but hopefully not as a serial murderer.

Source: ©T Pat Davis, helio research, much more information provided



The Ordinary

Marilyn Muir 10/31/1938
 7:33:33 PM EST (rectified from 7:42 PM)
 Cambridge, NY 73W22, 43N2
 KA 26 Gem 46 Lilith 4 Sag 5
 KA conjunct natal Ascendant 2°
 Lilith conjunct Venus 49°

7/9/52 Mother died	Pr KA conj Mars
6/25/56 graduated high school	Pr KA conj Sun
9/14/57 marriage	Pr K Dec conj Pr Uranus
12/6/57 moved to Hawaii	Pr K Dec conj N Uranus
8/28/58 birth 1st child, girl	Pr KA conj N Mercury (Virgo)
4/9/60 birth 2nd child, boy	Pr KA conj N Venus (Libra Asc)
4/10/62 birth 3rd child, boy	Pr KA trine N Moon (Cancer Moon)
4/63 ectopic preg, part hysterect	Pr KA square N Neptune
4/64 miscarriage	Pr KA conj N Asc
5/27/65 birth 4th child, girl	Pr K IC conj N Mars (Aries Moon)
6/15/69 moved to Florida	Pr KA conj N Pluto
4/28/70 separation	Pr KA square N Sun
2/1/72 divorce	Pr KA oppose N Jupiter (ruler 7th)
6/18/83 father died	Pr KA conj natal N Node
6/84 full hysterectomy	Pr KA conj N Mercury / conj PreN LE

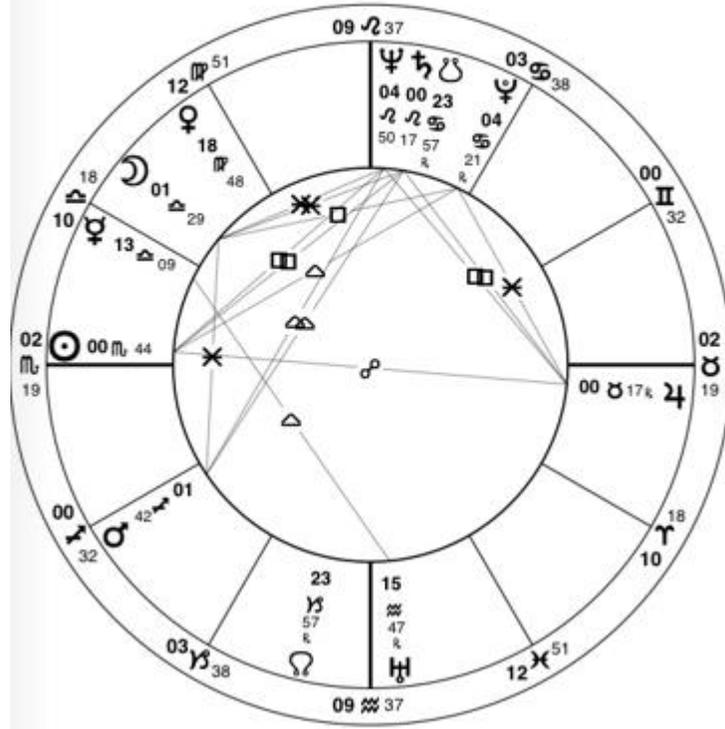
Marilyn's Mother born 10/24/1916
 6:31 AM EST (rectified from unknown birthtime)
 Poultney, VT 73W14, 43N31
 KA 16 Lib 6, Lilith 22 Gem 8

@4/24/21 Mother died childbirth	P KA conj Algol
10/7/23 Father died, quarry explo	P Lilith square N KA
11/10/35 marriage	P KA sext Sun, trine Jup, squ Mars
10/31/38 1st child, girl	P KA trn n N Node, P Venus conj N KA
9/12/44 2nd child, girl	P KA trine N Asc/Pluto (grand trine)
5/8/47 3rd child, boy	P KA to conj Pr Asc
1/9/52 operate brain tumor	P KA square N KA
7/9/52 native died	P KA conj PreN SE, oppose PreN LE, oppose natal N Node
6/18/83 husband died (chart lives on after death)	P KA to oppose N Uranus, P Lilith sextile N Part/Fortune

(not all aspects given, too many to list all)

Marilyn's Mother

Natal Chart
Tuesday, October 24, 1916
6:31:00 AM EST
Poultney, Vermont
Tropical Placidus True Node



Name: Marilyn Muir

Research: Karmic

Natal:

Sun	7 ^M 56	A 28 II 46
Mon	15 ^h 36	2 18 Co 12
Mer	21 ^M 9	3 8 Cr 19
Ven	4 ^X 54R	4 27M 49
Mar	4 ^h 16	5 6 A 1
Jup	22 ^h 40	6 18 M 33
Sat	12 ^M 50R	N Nod 18 ^M 70V
Ura	16 ^h 7R	Vx 17 ^M 55 o o
Nep	22 ^M 31	Lilith 4 ^X 5 o ♀
Plu	10 ^h 31	KA 2 6 II 46 o Asc

Equal house balance of chart

Composite (+ 10) 7^h o o o

Composite (-360) 13^h o o

Prenatal Solar Eclipse 7 II 32 o ♀

Prenatal Lunar Eclipse 22^M54 o ♀ o ♀

Prenatal New Moon 29^h17 ΔAsc KA

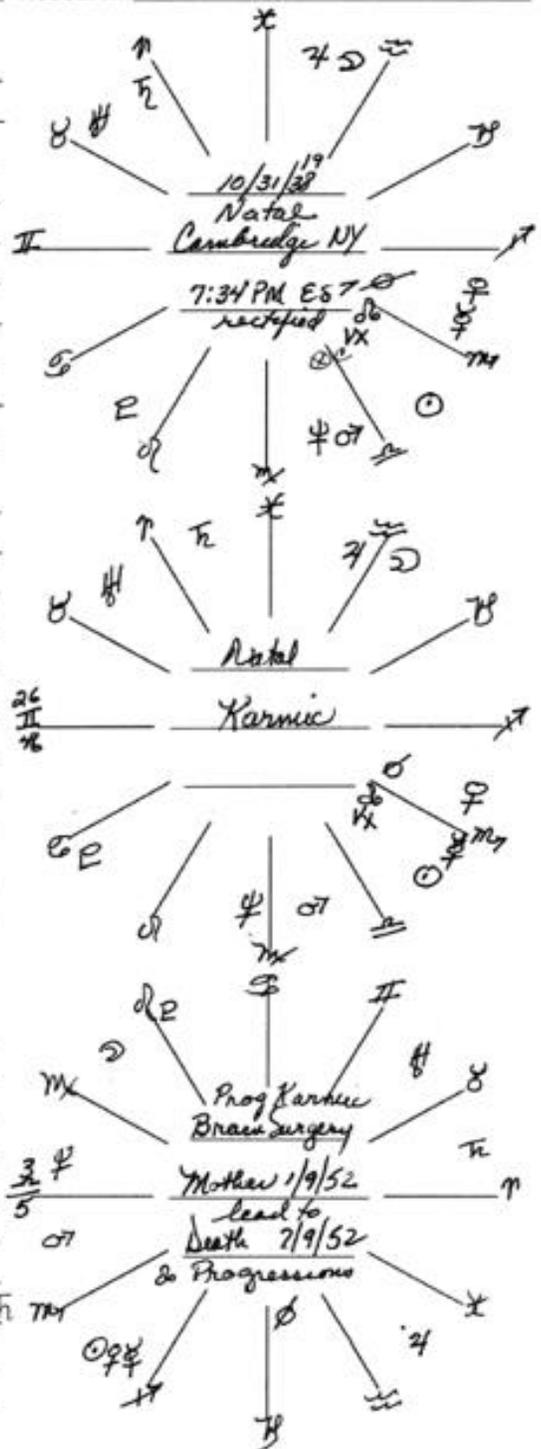
Prenatal Full Moon 15^M26 o h

Solunar Returns:

Age 21	29 ^M 2
51	29 ^X 14
81	29 ^H 36

Progressed Research:

Sun	21 ^M 10 o ♀	PA 10 Co 15
Moon	15 ^h 01 o o	2 29 Co 06
Mer	10 ^X 17	3 20 Cr 06
Ven	4 ^h 48	4 16 M 41
Mars	12 ^h 34 o h	5 22 A 09
Jup	23 ^h 30	6 3 M 41
Sat	12 ^M 03R	N Nod 17 ^M 46 o VR
Ura	15 ^h 35R	Lilith 13 ^M 31 o h h
Nep	22 ^M 50	KA o o o
Plu	10 ^h 28R	



Name: _____

Research: _____

Natal:

Sun _____ **A** _____
 Mon _____ **2** _____
 Mer _____ **3** _____
 Ven _____ **4** _____
 Mar _____ **5** _____
 Jup _____ **6** _____
 Sat _____ **N Nod** _____
 Ura _____ **Vx** _____
 Nep _____ **Lilith** _____
 Plu _____ **KA** _____

Equal house balance of chart

Composite (+ 10) _____

Composite (-360) _____

Prenatal Solar Eclipse _____

Prenatal Lunar Eclipse _____

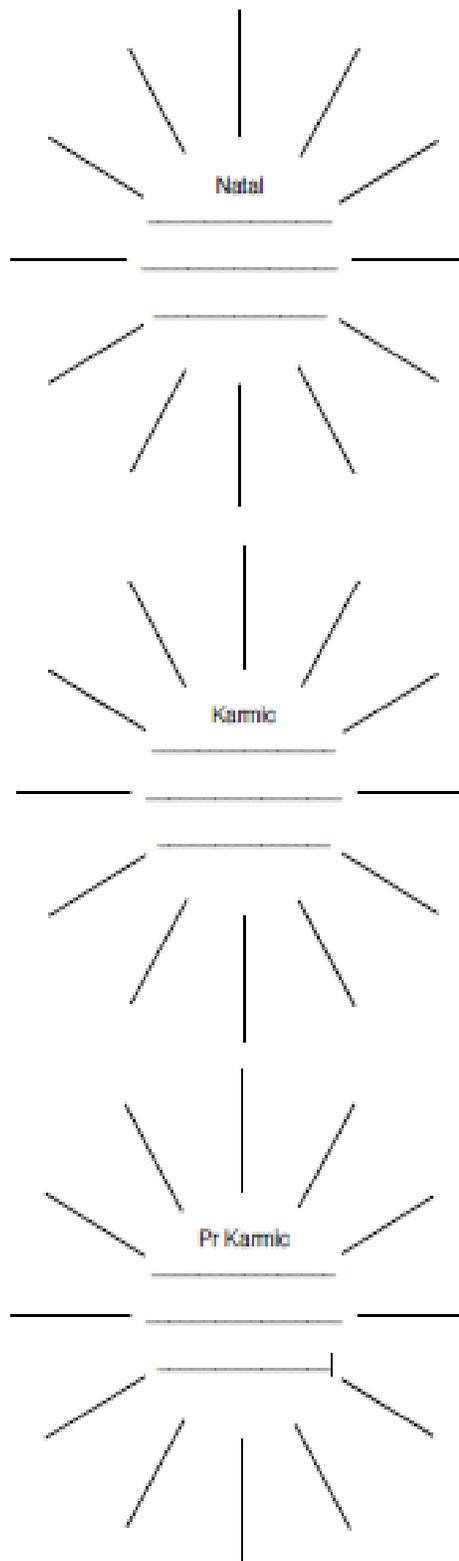
Prenatal New Moon _____

Prenatal Full Moon _____

Solunar Returns: _____

Progressed Research:

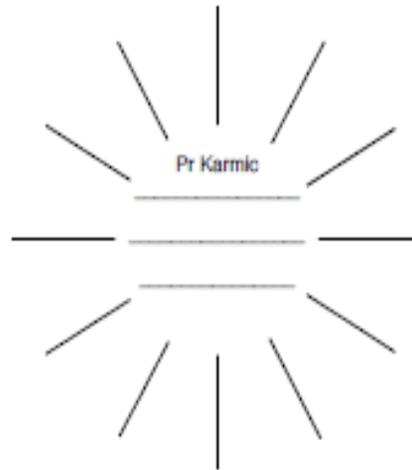
Sun _____ **PrA** _____
 Moon _____ **2** _____
 Mer _____ **3** _____
 Ven _____ **4** _____
 Mars _____ **5** _____
 Jup _____ **6** _____
 Sat _____ **KA** _____
 Ura _____ **N Nod** _____
 Nep _____ **Lilith** _____
 Plu _____ _____



Name: _____ Research: _____

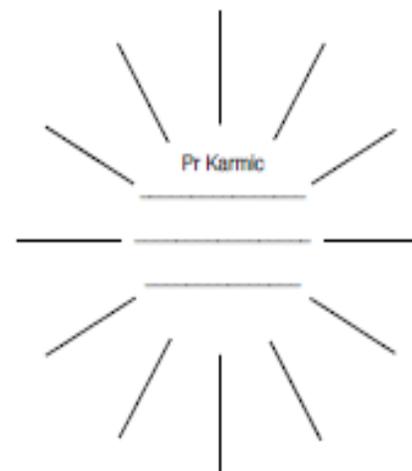
Progressed Research:

Sun _____ PrA _____
Mon _____ 2 _____
Mer _____ 3 _____
Ven _____ 4 _____
Mar _____ 5 _____
Jup _____ 6 _____
Sat _____ KA _____
Ura _____ N Nod _____
Nep _____ Lilith _____
Plu _____ _____



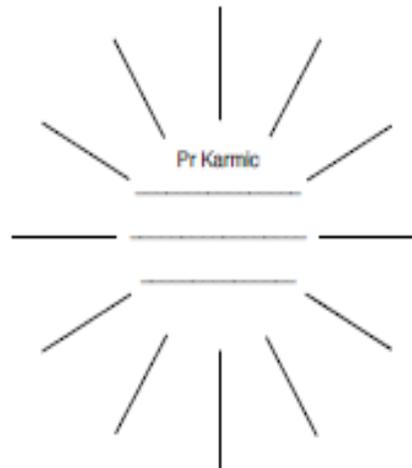
Progressed Research:

Sun _____ PrA _____
Moon _____ 2 _____
Mer _____ 3 _____
Ven _____ 4 _____
Mars _____ 5 _____
Jup _____ 6 _____
Sat _____ KA _____
Ura _____ N Nod _____
Nep _____ Lilith _____
Plu _____ _____



Progressed Research:

Sun _____ PrA _____
Moon _____ 2 _____
Mer _____ 3 _____
Ven _____ 4 _____
Mars _____ 5 _____
Jup _____ 6 _____
Sat _____ KA _____
Ura _____ N Nod _____
Nep _____ Lilith _____
Plu _____ _____



Karmic Relating

What do we Bring to the Table?

What do we Want for Ourselves?

How about Karma?

Soulmates and Twin Souls

What do we Bring to the Table? In order to understand any relationship, you must first understand the individuals involved in that relationship. Each natal chart stands alone,

- 1) revealing what or who each person is individually,
- 2) what each person needs from a relationship, and
- 3) what each person brings to a relationship.

The individual natal chart remains the same for any individual, regardless of the number or nature of the relationships in which that person is involved. The combining of charts and the implied nature of the relationship is unique between any combination of individuals. For example, I was a daughter, a sister, a wife, a mother, a friend, possibly an enemy, an acquaintance, a lover, a professional, etc. All that I am, in any of those roles, can be revealed by my natal chart if I have the astrological skill to ferret out all of them. All that I am or can be is revealed by the natal and its natural progressions. What else?

I am a daughter of two parents (or more if multiple parental marriages occur). My relationship with each parent is unique, just as the relationship between my two parents remained unique. During the first six years of my life, the three of us interacted as a unique group, two parents and one child. At age six, my sister was introduced into our group. At that moment, I had the roles of an individual, the child of two parents individually, our collective grouping, and now a sister to a new entity.

Each person mentioned has a valid individual chart. Each pairing is a relationship in its own right as previously established. New unique personal relationships were introduced between my sister and me, plus an individual relationship between her and each parent. A unique group relationship also came into existence between my sister and her two parents. They have a collective relationship that may or may not have anything to do with me.

The previous group relationship of my two parents and me still existed.

The new group relationship of my sister and her two parents still existed. But then both groupings had to be sublimated to the new relationship among the four of us.

When my brother was introduced 2-1/2 years later, the dynamics of each individual relationship previously mentioned remained the same, yet were forever changed by the addition of the new entity. My brother's unique and individual relationships with each parent and each sibling came into existence, as did new group dynamics. However, each pairing was sublimated to the overall dynamic of the now family of five.

A family or any grouping can be explored quite thoroughly if you want to take the time and do the work. Changing dynamics are available and visible through study of the natal and progressed charts of the individuals, the unique pairings, and the group combinations produced through composite and relationship charting. Lots of work? Yes. Lots of information and understanding? Yes. How far are you willing to go? What is valuable to you?

Karma? All I have referred to so far are normal astrological relationship workups. What about karma, the subject of this workbook? If karma is valid, if we have both natal and progressing karmic charts, how does karma apply to our relationships? How and why? As mentioned previously, I subscribe to the theory that Earth is a big schoolhouse and we are all students of life and living. The experiences we have and the relationships we encounter are lessons in living. At times we truly are students, relatively ignorant, learning as we go. As we experience and grow, we can become teachers or sharers of that experience. Sometimes the lessons are directed at us. Sometimes we are part of another person's lessons. Hopefully we grow and evolve in all.



**Mother Earth:
our schoolhouse**

- ✓ Are all lessons isolated to this lifetime and this experience?
- ✓ Is this the only opportunity available to us?
- ✓ Can there be unfinished lessons or unresolved issues that we bring into this lifetime?
- ✓ Will we complete all possible lessons this lifetime?
- ✓ Is it possible that there will be other opportunities in the future for us to resolve or complete our lessons?
- ✓ Is this the only game in town?
- ✓ What is the purpose of eternity if time to learn is not available to us?

I further subscribe to the theory that the universe is allowing us multiple opportunities and an eternity in which to learn. I also believe that relationships are the best possible tool for learning. That sets up another interesting set of questions.

- ✓ Are all relationships predestined?
- ✓ Or are some more casual or just never bloom?
- ✓ Are we doomed to repeat our relationship mistakes?
- ✓ Or can we make real relationship progress?
- ✓ Who's the matter with me?
- ✓ How can I recognize those relationships that are karmic?
- ✓ What is our karmic pattern?
- ✓ How can I grow and heal in my relationship ability?

Relationships are probably the most important and the most difficult aspect of our lives.

Remember that karma is largely misunderstood. Predestination? Fate? Free will? You own whatever you set in motion by your action, lack of action, or refusal to participate. What you do or do not do has its own consequence. Some consequences are pleasurable - we call that luck. Some consequences are uncomfortable - we call that karma. Actually, both comfortable and uncomfortable results are the working out of karma. Some consequences seem to follow immediately and are quite visible. Other consequences require time to unfold: minutes, hours, days, years, perhaps lifetimes. Time works against us for these long sequences because we cannot see initial action associated with reaction or result. Therefore, we feel like victims. Time also works for us because it allows us the opportunity to work through those lessons. Simply put, karma is the law of cause and effect worked out over time.

A natal chart is a map of the state of an individual at the moment of birth. Good, bad, or indifferent, your natal chart is your report card for the moment of birth. Your progressing chart is your evolution and progress after birth, what you did with what you came in with. Billions of people do not know their birth charts. They progress through life unaware or asleep to higher possibility, and their progressing map diagrams their growth or lack of it. Metaphysically, they are deemed asleep in matter, as are those people who have charts but have no clue. Some have charts, have chosen to wake up to possibility and are consciously cooperating with their Souls in their personal progress. Few are awakening and even fewer are awake. Where are you?

We are not islands. We interact and relate on a constant basis - impersonally and objectively in most relationships, personally and subjectively in a few. Impersonal relating involves day-to-day activities with strangers or acquaintances, news stories, etc. and lacks intimacy. Personal relating is more intimate: family, spouse, close friendships, counselors, etc. Relating is probably the most important, complex, and difficult skill to develop. We talk of a good relationship as a result, as if it is an object. Relating is a process, a path, a continually developing skill. A good relationship is the result of work, effort, affection and developing skills.

It takes two healthy people to have a healthy relationship. If one half is not healthy, the relationship cannot be. One healthy person can contribute greatly, but usually not enough. A relationship flaw is inherent with one unhealthy partner. We must not idealize, pedestalize or create impossible relationship goals and judgments. We must grow naturally towards our greater good. As we strive to become healthy ourselves and to enhance and improve our relationships, it is a process that can bring us great joy and fulfillment. How can the sky map (astrology) help us?

Fully understanding what motivates, reacts, and influences each individual is the beginning point - mapped by the natal charts. What am I looking for, what skills do I have or need, and what do I have to offer? What is my partner looking for, what skills do they have or need, and what do they have to offer? How have our progressions affected those needs and skills?

Once we understand the individuals involved, we then move to composites, relationship, and synastry. We generate lots of information about the viability of the relationship itself. And then there is always free will. We make personal choices to merge or separate, regardless of our map's suggestions. Unless we recognize our inherent relationship needs, weaknesses and strengths, and positively work to heal ourselves, we are doomed to attract our necessary lessons, time after time, relationship after relationship. Once we own our relationship patterns, observe, fix, develop, recognize tests, and move on, we encounter those patterns in their fine-tuning stage. Constant vigilance and awareness are necessary. It is easy to backslide in behavior and repeat old patterns. Progress is an exercise of our free will and awareness. In a relationship, both parties must be aware, willing and make good choices (process) to create a good relationship (result). Is there more?

Commonality Astrology has proved to me that we join together for common lessons. My best example is a client with Moon / Pluto conjunct. She married twice, both husbands with Moon / Pluto conjunct, had two children, both with Moon / Pluto conjunct, a brother-in-law with Moon / Pluto conjunct, and whose wife had (guess what?) Moon / Pluto conjunct. I wonder what they were learning together? Another client with six planets in Leo introduced me to two friends: one with five planets in Taurus and the other with five planets in Aquarius. Do you think they got together to learn stelliums? We do gravitate towards people who are learning similar themes or lessons. 60% of my own world is made up of Aries or Virgo types, and the other ten signs share the remaining 40% of my personal world.

Retrogrades have karmic implications by the very nature of their movement. Retrogrades move backward from their usual forward (now-to-future) direction. Backwards implies a return to a past energy, experience or position. If this present is all there is to life, how do we have memory at birth (our Moon)? Why would we need to re-visit (retrograde) degrees of signs and experiences already developed? When did we develop these skills? How and when did we develop the strengths and weaknesses inherent in the natal chart unless 1) there is also an inherent unfairness in life, which is possible; or 2) we, as entities, have a history. In Lesson 6 we will study retrogrades for incomplete or inadequate prior development, and the potential of internalizing and subjectifying the energy of that planet.

Nodes Traditional astrological methods that indicate karmic connections are shown through contacts to the Moon's Nodes, with the south node ruling associations from our past and the north node ruling those associations that pull us towards the future. Comfort or discomfort is shown through aspects. The Nodes are extremely relational, but in an overall relationship concept rather than individual application. Additionally, astrologers' old concept of the Nodes always travelling retrograde had to be corrected with advances in science. Nodes do not always move backwards (introspective and subjective). While their general motion is retrograde, the Nodes do have periods of direct motion (objective and externalized). We will study more about Nodes in Lesson 7.

Vertex Modern astrological methods indicate that the Vertex has a great deal to do with karmic associations, with the Anti-Vertex as the past and the Vertex as the present. The Anti-Vertex represents the point at which we have taken freely from individuals and our environment. The Vertex represents the point of balance where we must repay those individuals or the environment in general, and not necessarily by choice. Remember, both the Node and Vertex concepts stress the development of relationship skills in general, not necessarily one-on-one relationships themselves. Comfort or discomfort in experience is shown by aspects. See Lesson 8.

The Math Use computers for construction whenever possible. For synastry, you will need a natal chart for each individual. You will also need a composite chart and a relationship chart for the unit. And, additionally, you will need a progressed natal for each and progressed relationship, composite and synastry. Using those charts, construct the necessary karmic charts, natal and progressed, for all charts chosen. If you do not have access to a computer, basic chart construction skills will produce the charts needed. Be prepared to spend some time on chart construction. For more detailed instructions, please refer to my workbook, The Family – Viewed Astrologically, <http://www.marilynmuir.net/books/>. This explanation is about relating karmically.

- ✓ The natsals show the individual needs and contributions to a potential relationship. Synastry enhances your understanding.
- ✓ The composite chart is a midpoint construct which indicates what the relationship could be like if each person met the other person 50% of the way on all issues (the potential of that pairing - "what you sees").
- ✓ A relationship chart is erected from the midpoint of date, time and place of the births involved. It is a real-time chart with factual planetary positions, the potential of the composite in real life (actuality - "is what you gets").
- ✓ The more similar the composite is to the relationship, "what you sees *is* what you gets." If dissimilar, unfortunately that is not possible!

All charts are necessary. Composites are just as valuable as the relationship charts. Plus all types can be progressed – it's just a lot of work. How do you do all of this? Use the computer wherever possible. Do learn to cast charts by hand so you will not be handicapped if a computer is not available. (*Note: Chart construction will be in a separate workbook.*) Besides, you learn about motion and angles in a way that will increase your reading skill.

At one time, the composite was the only viable chart for relationship counseling. A composite is a midpoint chart constructed by adding together the points and planets from each chart and dividing them in half to arrive at a composite point. For example, add the Suns from two charts together, divide by 2 to find the composite Sun. Do the same for each planet (ten bodies). And then do the same for the Midheavens. Once the Midheaven has been determined, find the corresponding Ascendant and the intermediate house cusps in your table of houses at the latitude of the relationship (one technique). Drop the composite planets (retrogrades are not considered) in place in the house wheel you have erected. (You can also construct a composite Ascendant from both charts, but set it as a floating point within the composite chart and monitor it to see what useful information it generates.) The composite chart is read as a stand-alone for the relationship. (Technical details on Composite charting itself is included in *The Family – Viewed Astrologically*, referenced above.)

Relationship charts are more difficult to construct by hand and were therefore available only to a few people with the skill and the tenacity to construct them. Relationship charts require the midpoint of three distinct subjects as the basis of construction. The traditional rules are:

- ✓ Date: Find the mid-date between the two birthdates. You may need to use Julian days to find this exact date. Also, you may have to determine a half-day to find the exact middle (365.25 days in a year).
- ✓ Time: Find the middle between birth times, including whatever time standard is in effect and incorporate this into the date values.
- ✓ Place: Determine a new longitude and a new latitude for the relationship chart based on the midpoints derived from the pairing of the charts. Add the two longitudes and divide in half. Add the two latitudes and divide in half. This can get complicated if the longitudes are both east and west or if the latitudes are both north and south. See the reason for the computer? It does all this complicated math for you. Alternatively (and my personal preference), you can use the latitude of the existing relationship.

Once the new date, time and place have been determined, set a natal relationship chart. These natal planets may show retrogrades, which are valid for this specific chart.

Karmic Composite Employing the usual method, find the midpoint of the Sun and Moon in the composite chart by adding them together and dividing in half to find the karmic ascendant, equal house the karmic chart, and drop the composite planets in place (no retrogrades and no interceptions). Keep composite Mercury and Venus in proximity to the composite Sun.

Karmic Relationship Again, employ the usual method - find the midpoint of the Sun and Moon from the relationship chart, add together and divide in half to find the karmic ascendant, equal house the karmic chart, and drop the relationship planets in place (note that this chart may have retrogrades). Note: Since this is a midpoint in date, time and location, the relationship chart can be quite different from the composite. Pay particular attention to the Relationship Moon, which can be substantially different from the Composite Moon. More research is needed.

The big question for both karmic composite and karmic relationship charts: is the Karmic Ascendant in front of the Sun or in front of the Moon? If it is male with male, it will be in front of the Sun. If female with female, it will be in front of the Moon. If male with female, pure speculation. Try both or use them as an axis to read. In all cases, keep Mercury and Venus positions in close proximity to the Sun, which is reality.

Progressions Use progressed individual charts and reconstruct each composite and relationship chart from scratch and then construct the progressed karmic charts. Use the computer if you can – it's way too much hand work. Same question and answer apply: in front of Sun or in front of Moon? Practice will help.

Soulmates and Twin Souls

- ✓ What about karmic implications in relationships?
- ✓ What is a soulmate?
- ✓ What is a twin soul?

Have you ever met someone with whom you have made an instant bond, merging on so many levels? You feel you have known them all your life and, at times, cannot recall when you did not know them? Negatively, have you ever met someone and had your personal warning shields slam into place, anger and sometimes rage flare, and there is instant distaste? Where did that come from? How can you feel that way about someone you have

just met? Unless you did not “just” meet them? Apparently, you have a history, a reaction, perhaps even a mission, or maybe avoidance. The soulmate tie, which can be multiple and is not dependent upon the sex of the individuals involved, gives us that instant “knowing”, for good or for ill, a doorway into our past that continues into our present and possibly our future.

The twin soul concept is more rigid because we only have one of them. The philosophical theory is that way back at the moment of Creation, the individual Spirit divided itself into two matching halves and our Soul has spent eternity seeking its partner so that it can re-merge into the wholeness and at-one-ment that is Spirit. Purportedly, that is what drives humanity to seek its ideal mate. Traditionally there is one, only one, and therefore the pair are of necessity male / female in nature. It would be necessary for both to be incarnate at the same time and available to each other. This is not always possible. Meeting is rare and completion even rarer, perhaps next to improbable. Meeting with the inability to forge the union is devastatingly painful, yet poignantly beautiful. It is irresistible, leading to all the stages of denial, and finally to acceptance.

How do you recognize a karmic relationship? In order for there to be a relationship, there must be connection between the charts, natal to natal. Look at family charts to see similarities or to find the direct hookups that allow each pairing or grouping to have simultaneous experience. When I am teaching ongoing students, I usually ask for their charts so I can see the connections between us, not necessarily karmic. I am looking for the teacher / student ties. Some are much stronger than others or are just more evident. Some eventually become close friends as well. Numbers of connections strengthen the ties. Nodal, Vertex or retrograde contacts are possibly more karmic ties. See the separate lessons for those topics.

Many years ago, Astrologer Carol Rushman from Milwaukee presented a workshop with a basis for determining karmic relationship ties which I have successfully used. It is my preferred method. How do you know if you have the potential of your twin soul being available to you, regardless of whether or not you have met them? This is indicated by:

- ✓ A Sun / Neptune conjunction in a woman’s natal chart or a Moon / Neptune conjunction in a man’s natal chart. Or
- ✓ A Venus / Neptune benefic aspect in a male or female’s natal chart.

Look at all aspects, major and minor, including the quintile (72°). Start with the major aspects, back up with minors.

If a malefic Venus / Neptune aspect exists within a natal chart or an aspect is absent in a natal chart, the supposition is that the twin soul is not incarnate or is not available to you. The opposition seems to imply that one entity is on this side of life (incarnate), and the other entity is not on this side of life (discarnate). Venus / Neptune square or opposition, the soulmate is on the other side, hopefully helping the earthbound Soul learn about universal love and spiritualizing that love lesson.

How do you know if a pairing is a twin soul tie? Synastry. There must be a benefic aspect between Venus and Neptune between the charts for both souls to be incarnate and available to each other. What is incarnate? It is wearing a body, in the flesh. What is meant by availability? There are many possibilities - age, location, sex, creed, genetics, formerly race was significant, state of health, etc. Venus / Neptune ties between charts indicate relationships which are more spiritual than physical in nature - sympatico and / or transcendent.

When will you encounter such a karmic relationship? There must be a progressed to natal aspect between charts (Prog 1 to Natal 2 and Prog 2 to Natal 1) as well as a progressed aspect to a progressed position between the charts (Prog 1 to Prog 2 and Prog 2 to Prog 1) all within 3°, and involving any combination of planets / points (Asc / MC axes). Since all aspects must be considered, this could be a pain or pleasure meeting / relationship. In the karmic relationship charts I have witnessed both in Carol's original workshop and in my practice and personal workshops, orbs were much tighter than 3°. If your twin soul is available to you, the ties will be overwhelming, beyond mere chance, and supported by Venus / Neptune. Progressions cause the Soulmate to come in - the "when" of the experience.

I have had the fortune / misfortune to meet my own twin soul. As I am not with him and will not be in this lifetime, you can tell it did not work out. Awesome – and awful. Transcendent – and devastating. My advice? Do not look for it. It will find you if it is meant to be. The charts? I am 46 days older than my twin soul. I encountered him at age 42 when my progressed chart moved within 3° orb on its way to becoming his natal chart. Overwhelming ties? All of my progressed planets aspected all of his natal planets. Three years later, he called me (3 ° = 3 years), and it was done. We met – we knew it was not to be. How did it affect me? Kahlil Gibran writes on joy and sorrow in *The Prophet*:

“The deeper that sorrow carves into your being, the more joy you can contain...
they are inseparable.

Together they come, and when one sits alone with you at your board,
remember that the other is asleep upon your bed.”

Was it a good experience? That depends on whether my laughter or my tears are remembered. Did we grow and learn? I did. I cannot speak for him, although he was as amazed and affected as I was. Free will choices were made by our personalities, with our Soul growth and karma hopefully well served. Another time, another place.

Reading How do we read karmic relationships between natal and progressed charts? Back to our theory. Important relationships have many close ties (aspects within five degrees). Close ties indicate shared experience, which can be activated simultaneously. Specific ties have great impact, such as:

Angles If the Ascendant / Descendant is reversed between charts, it is good for permanence. If the angles between charts interact positively, such as Ascendant in one to the IC of the other, or the Descendant of one to the Midheaven of the other, this is considered a good tie. The most important ties two people can have between charts indicating a major karmic (law of cause and effect at work) or dharmic (initiating or building future karma) tie, are the Ascendant / Midheaven ties. If one’s Ascendant is on the other’s Midheaven, the Ascendant person is here this lifetime to help the Midheaven person fulfill their destiny. This, by virtue of that definition, is a future-oriented tie (dharma) perhaps sanctioned or caused by past (karma) activities or promises. The Midheaven represents the destiny-fulfilling potential, the native’s personal destiny. If one person’s planets cluster around another’s Midheaven, those planets must help that Midheaven become and fulfill their destiny. A similar can be made of planets clustering around the ruler of the 10th.

What do one person’s planets (unclustered) do in the other’s chart to help or hinder their becoming? Hinder? Activity depends on the planets involved and their aspects. Will they participate in or hinder the development of the destiny? My Midheaven is Pisces, the rulers are Jupiter (old ruler) or Neptune (new ruler), and there are no other planets in my 10th house. Are your personal planets supportive of either my Midheaven (2 Pisces 49) or either of its rulers, Jupiter 22 Aquarius 39 or Neptune 22

Virgo 31? If so, you should be supportive of my destiny. If your planets or points are poorly aspected to those three positions, you may hinder the development of my destiny. If none of your planets or points are connected to those three points in my chart, ambivalence exists. You should neither support or hinder my destiny and you can just float in and out of my experience without much impact.

Reverse this procedure. Are my planets supportive of either your Midheaven, its ruler(s) or any planets within your 10th house? If so, I can be supportive of your destiny. Are there adverse aspects? Support may not be forthcoming. In fact, hinderance may be the experience. No contact? I may neither help nor hinder and I may have little impact. Perhaps this class will be what seems like a waste of time for you. The Midheaven is what you must accomplish or become in this lifetime, the mountain you are climbing. Aid and support will be welcome. Hindrance could occur from multiple sources. Ambivalence will be the common experience. Go back to the phrase “waste of time”. Every experience is valuable. Even if all you learn is that you do not belong there, every experience has value.

Emphasis For example, male natal Venus 12, in 2° sextile to natal Neptune 14. Enter female natal Venus at 14. The female 14 would tighten the male’s natal sextile. This is an actual pairing. When progressed Venus trined natal Venus between the charts, she came into his life.

Love There can be no love in a relationship without a Venus aspect (to or from), such as Venus trine Jupiter, Venus sextile Neptune, Venus trine Saturn, Venus sextile Sun. When any of these progressed aspects occur, it can signify true love. Sun to Venus is called “the love of the life aspect”. Progressed Venus / Mars conjunction signifies marriage. Progressed Venus to natal Moon signifies domestic harmony.

When the transiting North Node trines, conjuncts or opposes the natal North Node, within five days you can meet the person with strong and lasting connections. This can also be true of the transiting North Node trine your natal Sun.

Saturn People do get together with Saturn aspects to the Ascendant and / or Midheaven. Are the aspects comfortable or uncomfortable? Saturn represents enduring ties, regardless of aspect. Synastry without Saturn implies a lack of durability of the relationship. “I will be responsible for you,” represents good Saturn aspects between charts. “I will try to

discipline you,” represents difficult Saturn aspects between charts. Regardless of the degree of comfort with Saturn, the hard aspects, conjunction, opposition or square may hold the relationship tighter than the soft aspects, trine or sextile.

Venus trine or sextile Saturn can promise the true love later in life (Saturn does rule time), frequently by progressed sextile.

Mars square Saturn can promise psychological sexual problems or tensions that will develop over time.

Saturn over Venus by transit defines a relationship: do this or do that, or split. Any relationship started under Saturn is enduring, and can be with an older person or someone from the past.

Nodes We will be giving more attention to the Nodes in lesson seven. Briefly, the North and South Nodes represent compulsive or compelling ties. The South Node represents former ties, things already done, associations already established. The North Node represents what we are working on becoming or developing. Keywords:

North: where I need to go or grow.

South: where I have experienced enough, habitual.

In general, nodal ties to:

- ✓ the Sun are paternal; to the Moon, maternal;
- ✓ to Venus, lover or daughter; to Mars, lover or son;
- ✓ to Mercury, student, child, sibling;
- ✓ to Jupiter, teacher; to Saturn, authority or mentor.
- ✓ Uranus, Neptune and Pluto are generational ties. Too many people have these ties to make them exclusively personal, but do check them out.

Angular Nodes can be the most difficult to experience. Remember the Nodes travel as a pair. If one Node is angular, both Nodes are angular. If one person’s Node is conjunct another’s Ascendant, the Node person owes the Ascendant person something. If the South Node is conjunct the Ascendant, the tie is from the past. The Node person may try to avoid payment. Since past ties are not visible or provable, avoidance could be natural. If the North Node is conjunct the Ascendant, the tie is future oriented, probably more visible or acceptable, and you stand a better chance of resolution.

If the North / South Nodes oppose each other between charts, there is unfinished business from a past lifetime. Opposites attract. You can be together for a time until you resolve those issues, then separate. Each one knows (South Node) what the other is learning (North Node).

Example of reversed Nodes: Many years ago, a woman came into my life, purportedly to help me establish a healing hospital and center in South Florida. I knew the healing end and she knew the business / fundraising end. See the Node reversal and common application? She was initially gung-ho. I was the more reserved because I had experienced a history of well-intentioned promises and not much follow-through. We actually went looking for a location in Miami Beach. Suddenly, she had tax problems, which are not funny and do tend to consume your time and your life. Understandable. Her way of dealing with her inability to proceed with our project was to get mad at me, so the healing hospital died before it was born. She and I will have to work out our karmic connections in some other experience.

Clustering Single contacts are different from clusterings. If someone's planets (ten) or points (everything else) are clustered around someone else's north Node, the cluster person can aid the Node person in the development of relating skills or sign skills of the North Node. If someone's planets or points are clustered around another's South Node, this is a really risky relationship. The cluster person tends to keep the South Node person in an area of least resistance and can be draining with no growth. Be on guard.

Past Lives Aside from the South Nodal contacts presented, look at the 4th house rulers between the charts. The 4th house significator planet from chart one translated to chart two, which is in aspect to chart one's Moon represents a definite past lifetime, e.g.:

Female chart: 4th is Virgo, Mercury ruler (translate)
Male Mercury trine female Moon (past life tie)

Male chart: 4th Sagittarius, Jupiter ruler (translate)
Female Jupiter square male Moon (past life tie)

The 4th house can be a clue to what you were in past incarnations (if you believe in such).

Aquarius on 4th or Uranus conjunct cusp, past life Atlantis.
Pisces on 4th or Neptune conjunct cusp, past life Lemuria.
Uranus retrograde, astrologer in past lifetime.
Pluto / Uranus conjunct may be mass karma such as holocaust.

When? Watch the progressions to see if any relationship is important.

Progressed to Progressed For a relationship to be significant, there must be a progressed Moon aspect within a 3° orb when people meet. It must be in both charts, both ways. You can use minor aspects to determine significance.

Progressed to Natal You must have a progressed Moon contact to a natal planet or point in each chart. E.g., Male progressed Moon contact to both male and female natal planets and the same for the female progressed Moon. Example:

Male progressed Moon semi-sextile male Saturn
Male progressed Moon opposed female Sun
Female progressed Moon sextile female N Node
Female progressed Moon conjunct male ascendant
Female progressed Moon square male MC / IC / Mercury

Process and Endings You may determine how a relationship is going by the progressed positions between charts. Marriages tend to begin and end with aspects to the 7th, its ruler or planet(s) in the 7th, or the 7th cusp may change signs or progress to a malefic aspect. Love ends when progressed planets afflict the other person's planets.

Example: I did chart readings for a woman and her male friend for many years. What a wonderful relationship and eventual marriage borne out by continuing good progressions! Eventually, her reading showed an end to the years of good aspects. The relationship was so strong I was not concerned. I should have been. Without warning, he withdrew from the relationship. They lived separately for a year. Eventually, through her patience and willingness to give him time and space, they got back together and they have probably the most well-balanced relationship I know. While the love relationship was strong and did maintain, it went through a bad spot.

Following is the twin soul example mentioned in this lesson. While I do not mind using my history to teach karmic charting, I must honor the anonymity of my twin soul who has a wholly separate life. Therefore, I will deliberately leave out any personal identification for his chart. Please respect his privacy. Twin souls are unique and believed to be uniquely male to female. They are rare to encounter. This is my only detailed example. If you encounter an example in your studies, I would appreciate the chart data. There are moments I would appreciate an alternative to putting my own personal life on display.

Reference: The Art of Predictive Astrology by Carol Rushman is not necessarily about Karmic Astrology, but is the only book I am aware of that she wrote. I respect what she taught me.

Twin Soul Research Examples

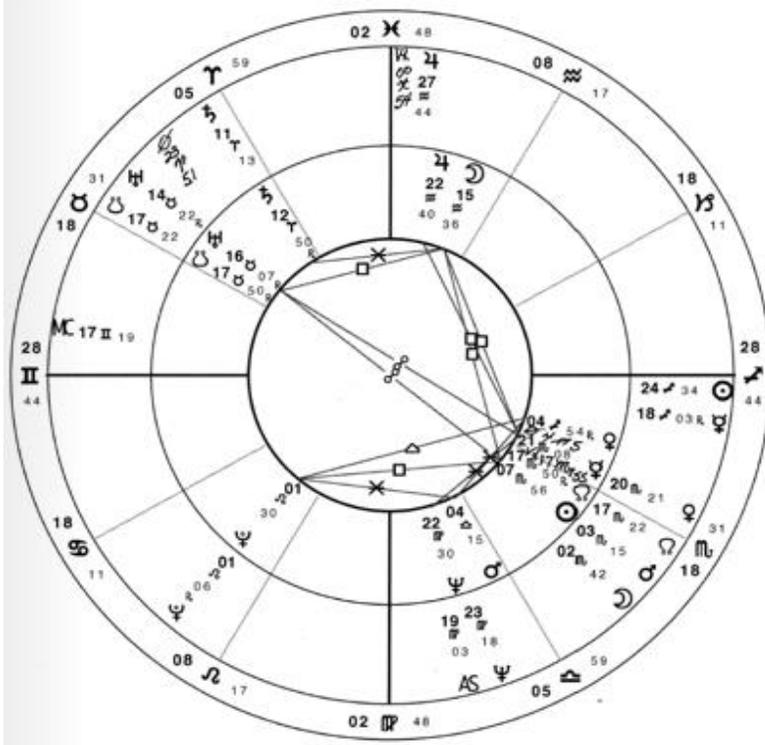
Birthdates: 10/31/38 female 12/16/38 male 46 day spread
Date of meeting: 7/10/81 both 42+ years old

Female Natal	Female Prog	Male Natal	Male Prog
MC 2 Pis 49	MC 18 Ari 15	MC 17 Gem 19	MC 26 Can 10
Asc 28 Gem 46	Asc 3 Leo 39	Asc 19 Vir 3	Asc 22 Lib 18
Sun 7 Sco 56	Sun 21 Sag 2	Sun 24 Sag 34	Sun 7 Aqu 55
Mon 15 Aqu 36	Mon 16 Vir 42	Mon 2 Sco 42	Mon 9 Tau 20
Mer 21 Sco 8	Mer 22 Sag 42	Mer 18 Sag 3	Mer 23 Cap 43
Ven 4 Sag 54	Ven 19 Sco 44	Ven 20 Sco 21	Ven 21 Sag 6
Mar 4 Lib 15	Mar 1 Sco 5	Mars 3 Sco 15	Mar 29 Sco 35
Jup 22 Aqu 40	Jup 27 Aqu 10	Jup 27 Aqu 44	Jup 6 Pis 19
Sat 12 Ari 50	Sat 11 Ari 13	Sat 11 Ari 13	Sat 13 Ari 00
Ura 16 Tau 07	Ura 14 Tau 29	Ura 14 Tau 22	Ura 13 Tau 51
Nep 22 Vir 30	Nep 23 Vir 17	Nep 23 Vir 18	Nep 23 Vir 01
Plu 1 Leo 31	Plu 1 Leo 9	Plu 1 Leo 6	Plu 00 Leo 12
N Nod 17 Sco 50	Nod 17 Sco 19	Nod 17 Sco 22	Nod 13 Sco 32

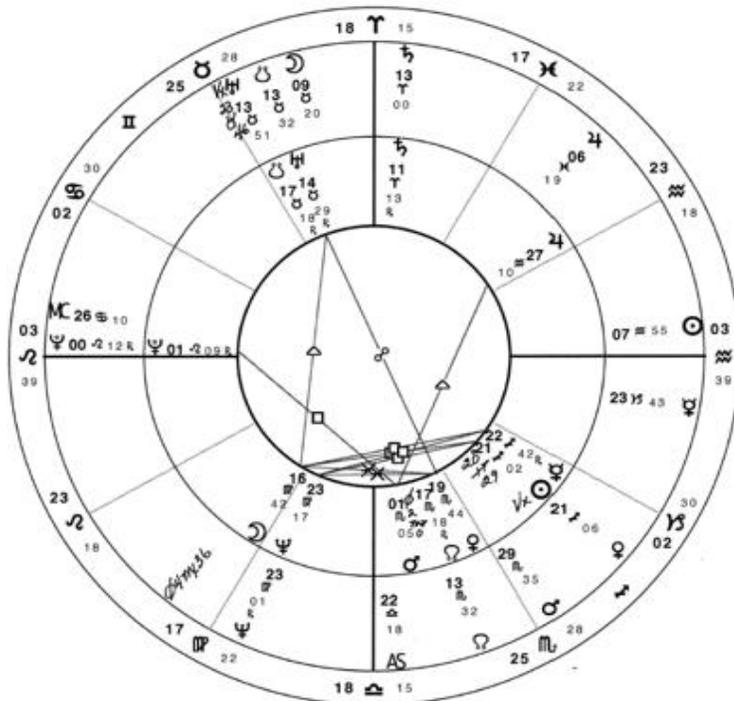
Synastry (not all aspects listed)

F MC trine M Moon/Mars	M Sun conj F Dec
F Sun conj M Moon/Mars	M Asc sextile F Merc
F Moon trine M MC, sext M Merc	M Moon trine F MC
F Merc conj M Venus, sext M Asc	M Mars trine F MC
F Jup sext M Sun, squ M Venus	M MC trine F Moon
F Node sext M Asc	M Jup trine F Asc

(all outer planets / node conjunct, make same aspects as personal natal)



**Twin Soul Natal Chart Comparison
(Marilyn – Inside Wheel)**



**Twin Soul Progressed Natal Chart Comparison
(Marilyn – Inside Wheel)**

Composite

MC 25 Ari 03
Asc 1 Leo 18

Sun 1 Sag 15
Mon 24 Sag 09
Mer 4 Sag 36
Ven 27 Sco 38
Mar 18 Lib 45
Jup 25 Aqu 12
Sat 12 Ari 2
Ura 15 Tau 15
Nep 22 Vir 54
Plu 1 Leo 18
N Nod 17 Sco 36

Relationship

MC 27 Ari 27
Asc 9 Leo 45

Sun 1 Sag 9
Mon 24 Sag 51
Mer 22 Sag 48
Ven 24 Sco 59R
Mar 18 Lib 47
Jup 24 Aqu 29
Sat 11 Ari 36
Ura 15 Tau 11
Nep 23 Vir 2
Plu 1 Leo 24
Nod 17 Sco 46

to Natals

both sextile Jupiters
both conj Plutos,
C Asc squ M Mars/Moon
both conj F Venus
both conj F Dec, conj M Sun
C Mer conj F Venus
Ven conj M Venus
both trine M MC, sext M Merc
both sext M Sun

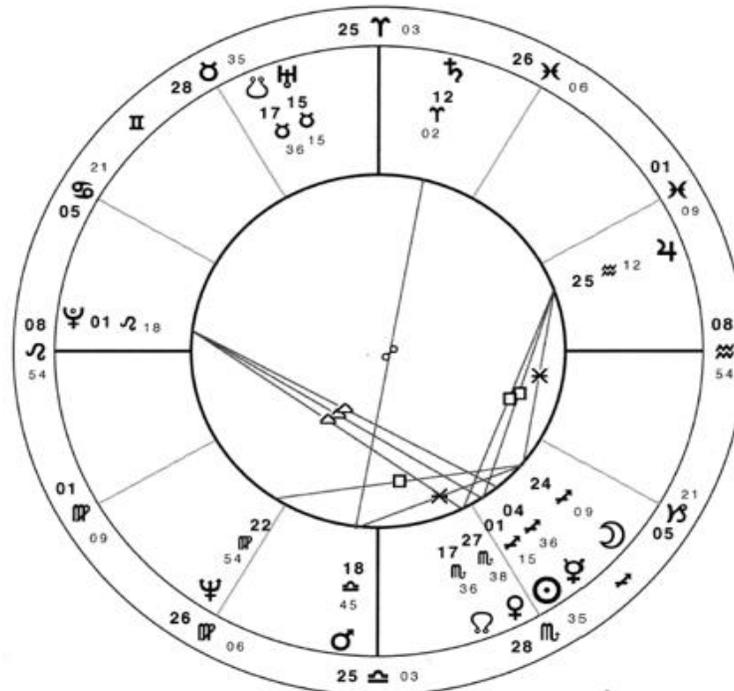
(All outer planets / node conjunct, make same aspects as personal natal.)

Progressed hits between charts:

- ✓ Look first at positions of progressed female chart to man's natal chart, many hits.
- ✓ Male's progressed chart set up newer possibilities, more than female's progressed.

Pr F MC sextile M N MC, trine M N Merc
Pr M Asc trine F N Jup

Pr F Moon square M N Asc
Pr M Moon oppose F N Sun



Composite Chart

Pr KA female 3 Sco 52
Pr KA male 28 Pis 37
Pr KA composite 26 Cap 15

Pr Lilith female 17 Ari 46
Pr Lilith male 4 Vir 36
Pr Lilith composite 26 Gem 11

Pr F KA conj M N Mars/Moon, square M N Pluto
Pr F Lilith sext M N MC, trine M N Merc
Pr M KA square F N Asc
Pr M Lilith conj F N IC
Pr C Lilith conj F N KA and F N Asc
Pr C KA conj M Pr Mer

Natal composite and relationship wheels provided to complete the package, not delineated.

Hand-drawn charts to protect privacy, please respect.

Hierarchal Evolution

The World's Karmic Charting
Galactic Astrology
The World Ages
Decanates, Dwads, Terms and Faces
Other Age Influences - Our Pole Star

The World's Karmic Charting Now that we have established the principle of your progressing and (hopefully) evolving consciousness, let us enlarge on this concept from a personal perspective through our work with the karmic chart. Let us try to shift that perspective from the personal (I / me) to the universal (the cosmos). In order to do this together, we will need to establish some parameters or guidelines, commonly known as assumptions. Please always remember that you are free to disagree with or to change those parameters *after* you have studied and completed this material. You are not required to agree with me, or my observations on any continuing basis. However, give the study material (and me) a chance to present this point of view in its entirety before altering it. Do not change horses in mid-stream. Other points of view are just that - not necessarily the truth, but not necessarily an untruth. If I am growing and evolving, my opinion and understanding will change with experience. What I write today may not be my Truth tomorrow. Your opinion is just as valid as mine.

Start with the assumption that there is a God, a living creative force behind what we call the universe. Further assume that while we can contemplate this God, its dimensions are probably beyond our comprehension. God is far more vast than we can imagine because we attempt to contemplate, evaluate and explain the Infinite, the Eternal and the Unlimited in finite, concrete, human terms. Approaching this mind-boggling attempt to define and understand God, we are well aware of our own intellectual limitation and the limitations of our language. If you do not believe in Deity, think Universality, Timeless, Evolution, Change. Concept is key. Do not allow yourself to get stuck in word choice!

Also assume that this universal creative principle we call God (or whatever label we choose) is beyond our concept of time: God “was, is now, and ever more shall be” – Eternal. This God pre-existed and will live beyond our definition of time, space and experience. Also assume that this God is Infinite in terms of dimension, from the smallest unit of measure to the

intergalactic dimension. God is theologically defined as Omnipotent (all powerful), Omnipresent (everywhere present), and Omniscient (all knowing). I believe this qualifies as Infinite in human terms, again to the degree that any human can comprehend the Infinite.

Science As we explored in a previous lesson, the western holy book, the Bible, says. “In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth.” If God is Eternal and God had no beginning, then God already existed “in the beginning”. What began was the manifest universe and physical life as we are able to measure and define with our human awareness. Our scientists have many theories of this “beginning”. The most popular is the big bang theory where life emerged suddenly from no-where and no-thing, a singularity. That universe, which is in the process of expanding outward from that primal explosion, could reach an outer limit and start collapsing back in on itself, the concept of entropy, condensing back to its original point of origin. In other words, we start from an undifferentiated, chaotic primordial soup. Creative impulse sends us individualized and differentiated out into the void and eventually draws us back into Itself. As we have billions of years, eons, of processing, we need not be personally concerned with the return. Only know that the return *can* be part of the overall cycle. Space / time or creation is a curved line that will eventually return to its source. That which proceeds from the Creator will eventually return to the Creator, whether or not the big bang theory is accurate. Note that there are other theories of the growth or potential end of the Universe.

Religion John 1:1 says, “In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God.” Therefore, in the beginning (of the manifest universe as we understand it) God (which pre-existed the beginning) created by the Word (sound, tone, vibration). A stirring occurred in the primordial soup that drove it into movement, action, visibility, and manifestation. God created by “the Word”. Since only God was present, Creation itself had to be formed out of the substance or nature present – God. The Creator lived within, yet was greater than Its creation. Just as the ocean gives its qualities to any drop of water that resides within it, the ocean is greater than the single drop. Therefore, everything that exists has its substance, purpose, and existence within the Allness that is God.

God is all that we can see, measure, believe in and then some. God is beyond our comprehension, yet we are always following that curved path which will eventually return us to our Source. We left that Source with full awareness, lost that awareness somewhere in the experiencing, and are in the process of re-discovery (not invention) for our eventual return

to full awareness and our Source. If we can understand this for ourselves and the rest of our species, regardless of their external actions and the masks they wear, it should not be difficult to extend that understanding to contain all life, all experience, and all possibility. I am still working on my understanding. Hang in there. Some people wear very good masks to cover their spirituality. All of our universe, from a speck of dust, a human, a galaxy or larger, is on this universal trek: to reach out into the possibility of experience and then to return to the Source, whereupon it will rest (primordial soup). And then that Source can create anew out of Itself, if It so chooses. As an example, the muscles in our body really only perform one specific action: contraction. All bodily motion is combinations of muscles performing that one action. When not specifically contracted, each muscle is “at rest”.

It is easy to see the cycles in nature and in our lives. From conception to death, all of nature goes through observable, repetitive cycles, each individual, yet comparable to another life form. The botanist examines the cycle of the plant kingdom. The geologist examines the cycles of the mineral kingdom. Many sciences examine the cycles of the animal and human kingdoms. Theology examines, or is supposed to, the spiritual or non-physical kingdom. The cycle of life that is present within one is present within all, whether sub-atomic or galactic, animal, vegetable or mineral. Either God is everywhere present, or is not. Astronomers / astrologers study this same cycle in the patterns of planets, stars and galaxies. As man increases in technological intelligence, we have more recently become aware that our colossal universe may be only one of many in the multiverse. That knowledge should eventually give way to even larger currently unknown dimensions as we continue to learn and to grow.

The evolutionary cycle that we see, which produces increasingly complex forms and experience, occurs on all levels. Humanity and individuality are a part of that cyclic process, as are our planet, our solar system, our galaxy and our universe. That cyclic process is measurable, subject to error in both measure and point of origin, incomplete, yet increasingly visible to us – an open-ended, ever-changing, hopefully progressively evolving process. If man is on a cyclic emerging process, so are all other life forms and expressions. If we can decipher the code to one level, we should be able to apply the principles learned to other levels. Ideally the study of one life form should contribute to the understanding of all life forms. Since we “know in part”, our grasp is not yet ideal. We are growing, learning and expanding that partial knowledge on a moment-to-moment basis. That is exciting!

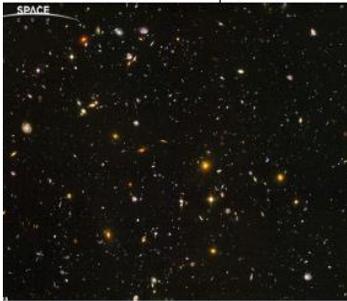
Galactic Astrology If man is evolving, so are the Earth, the Sun and the whole body of our Sun-centered solar system – and beyond that, our galaxy, its neighbors, our universe and its neighbors, creation itself – and, possibly, the Creator itself?

In my studies of galactic astrology (and my study is in its infancy), I am aware, for example, that our very small solar (sun-centered) system is located on an outer spiral arm / spur of the Milky Way Galaxy, which is only one of more than thirty galaxies in a local cluster our astronomers call the Super Cluster. This Super Cluster, in turn, is a small part of our local universe. Local? It turns out that our universe is visibly local and that other universes are possible. The distances are staggering to imagine, yet not infinite, for there is still an unknown beyond what we can currently see.

Our local Milky Way Galaxy, which is shaped like a fried egg when viewed from the side, includes our personal solar system. We exist about 2/3rds of the distance from the center in a spur of the Sagittarius spiral arm of the Milky Way Galaxy. Our galaxy revolves around a center thought to be an enormous black hole at 27° Sagittarius. This center degree continually shifts slightly, 1° every 72 years. A complete orbital cycle of our Solar System around our galaxy takes about 230,000,000 years, again a circle, commencing at some unknown point, and eventually returning to that point. This 230-million-year cycle would indicate a repetitive, cyclic evolutionary process for our Sun and its solar system, perhaps still only representing a small piece of its total evolution. Our knowledge is quite limited at this point.

Within our own system, there is an observable, measurable cycle of just under 26,000 years which is based on the position of our polar axis and equatorial angle to the backdrop of the zodiac and the stars of the northern constellations. This slow-moving, continual pattern determines the esoteric “Changing of the Ages” for Earth. To understand this change, look to the astronomical pattern. [1]

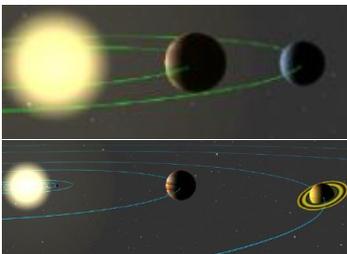
As I am sure you are aware, Earth and its Moon and the eight major planets (yes, I am aware that Pluto was demoted) and their moons travel around the Sun in a regular, not quite circular, pattern called the ecliptic, the path on which eclipses occur. This Earth trip takes 365 1/4 days and is called our orbit. As the Earth travels in its orbit, it also spins like a child’s top,



A super cluster of galaxies, similar to our local super cluster of 30+ galaxies
Source: Space.com, the Hubble Telescope



Milky Way Galaxy is a spiral galaxy, similar to galaxy NGC 3949
Source: Space.com, the Hubble Telescope
(More recently, astronomers are suggesting that we have a slight “bar” to our spiral).



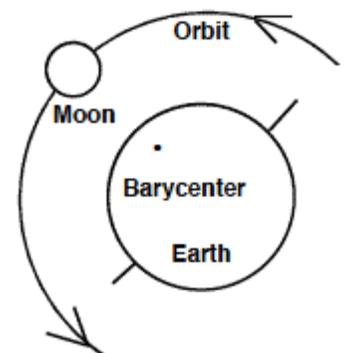
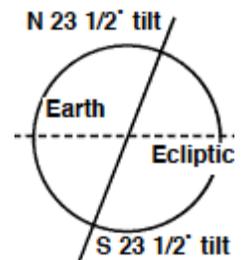
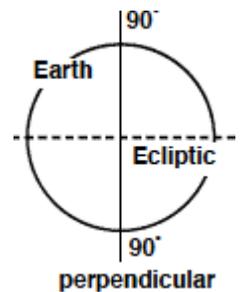
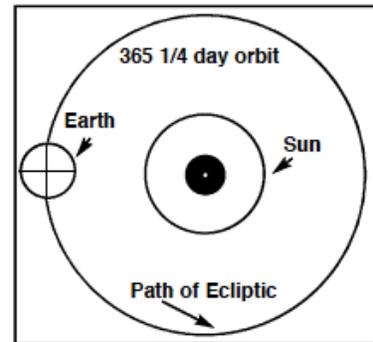
Our solar system is similar to 47 Ursae Majoris in the Big Dipper
Source: Space.com, the Hubble Telescope

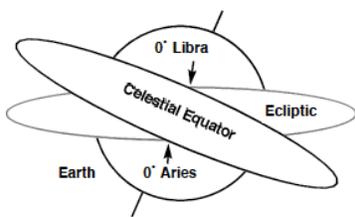
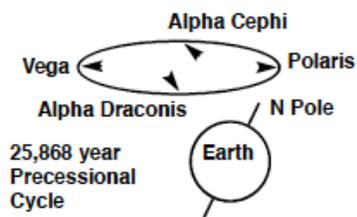
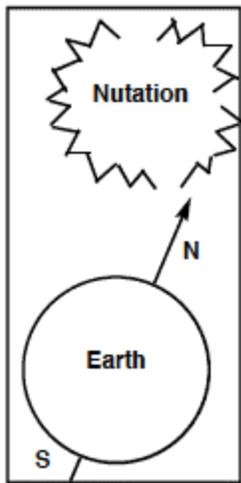
completing one full revolution in about 24 hours. If you have watched a spinning top, you will have noticed that, regardless of the shape of the top, the spin is not completely smooth. There is a distinct wobble which increases as the top slows its spin. The plunger at the very top of our imaginary child's top and the point on which it spins represents its axis.

Earth then is a roughly circular object, traveling in a roughly circular path (orbit) around a roughly circular Sun, traveling one full rotational circle on a daily (diurnal – 24-hour) basis. Earth has an axis similar to a child's top; however, that axis is not perpendicular (90° - right angle) to the orbital plane. Instead, the Earth is inclined (tipped) on its polar axis at $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ to the perpendicular of its orbit around the Sun (the ecliptic). The points of the polar axis are called the north and south poles on which the Earth spins.

Earth, which is considered to be round, is really not. Thinking again of the child's top, the top and bottom are significantly smaller in width than the center. The Earth is shaped similarly. To divide the Earth halfway between the north and south poles produces the equator. Extending that equator off into space creates the celestial equator. As the Earth rotates, the spin process throws more weight to certain areas near the equator, and compensates in other areas near the poles by a flattening effect. This shape and its geographic location are constantly being changed by the molten interior, the internal pressure of the moving tectonic plates and the occasional shifting of the polar axis. The spread of land mass, ice caps and water camouflage any distortion as evidenced by the photos taken of the Earth from outer space. For convenience of measure, map-makers show the Earth as round or tangerine-shaped, when in reality its solid mass slides towards being pear-shaped. Earth is continuously being molded and remolded. It is growing and changing much as we are, but over considerably longer periods.

In addition, Earth's Moon orbits the Earth on around a 27-day basis and is held by the greater magnetic attraction of the Earth. Although it is commonly believed that the Moon orbits the Earth, this is not quite true. The Earth and the Moon orbit around a common point called the barycenter which is located about 1000 miles inside the Earth's crust. Since the Moon is so large ($\frac{1}{4}$ the size of the Earth) and so close (roughly 240,000 miles), the Moon has a profound magnetic effect not only on the oceans and waters of the Earth, but also upon the rotation and the landmass of the Earth itself. This is a magnetic attraction performed by and acting upon both bodies.





Therefore, through the spinning process, the Earth completes one revolution (rotation) daily and takes a step 1° forward in its orbit. However, due to the inclination of $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ of the Polar Axis, the shape of the Earth itself and the Moon's magnetic influence, that rotation or spin is not quite smooth. The effect is a slight wobble (nutation) much as mentioned when the child's top was spinning. This wobble will increase in time as Earth's rotation slows and our Moon moves away in its orbit, probably millions of years in the future, again like a child's top. This wobble does a very interesting thing - it traces a circle of its own in the sky. While the wobble is small, this circle takes thousands of years to complete, just under 26,000, depending upon which source you quote. I chose the first figure I encountered, 25,858 years.

During that complete cycle, the north pole (the measuring device) will point most directly at one of four pole stars. Currently, we are pointing towards Polaris, our north star. According to *DeVore's Encyclopedia* [1], this will perfect itself in 2095 AD. At other times during its cycle, it will point closely to three other pole stars, including Vega, Alpha Draconis and Alpha Cephei.

Since we use the zodiac as a backdrop to measure distances, positions and travel, we will continue to do so. This wobble traces through all twelve signs of the zodiac as it completes its circle. Assuming that all signs are of equal duration, and this is not necessarily a safe assumption, 25,858 years divided by 12 signs = 2155 years per sign. Since all zodiac signs are not equal in length of actual space, this may not be a valid measure. For example, Pisces is 19° and Virgo is 41° of actual space, the two then average at 30 degrees each. Since there are several astronomical factors to be taken into consideration (see DeVore's) you will see an age written as 2155 or 2160 years in length through the rounding off process for a particular source.

The date of change is supposedly determined by the vernal equinox (that moment in the spring when the celestial equator and the ecliptic meet in a south to north direction at 0° Aries entering the age sign in question. Inasmuch as modern man does not know and can only estimate the beginning basis used by the ancients, and with the constant movement of the constellations used as the measure, the exact date of the changing of signs is individual opinion and conjecture. You will encounter many theories. Each is exactly that - a theory.

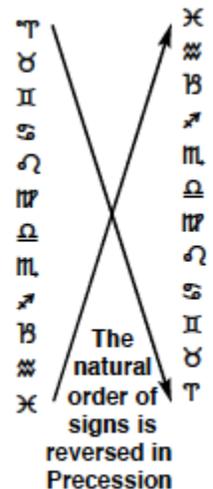
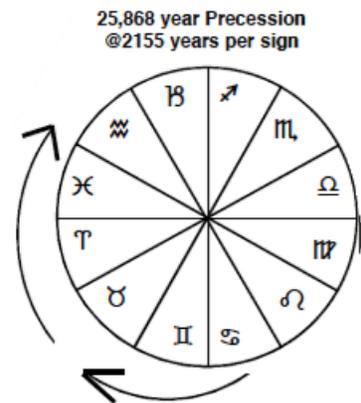
Because the direction of the wobble and its passage through the signs traces through the zodiac backwards, the motion is called precession. Exit of a sign occurs at 0°0' of that sign as the vernal equinox enters 29°59' of the preceding sign. Remember, the direction is retrograde through the signs. The sign is entered at 30° and exited at 0°. This is contrary to your other studies, but is actual in terms of measure and must be memorized. Each sign represents an “age” in the developing of each earthly species or life form and the evolution of Mother Earth herself. Humans tend to apply it exclusively to the development of the human race, when in reality it is much more pervasive.

If we were able to plot Earth’s history in 2155-to-2160-year increments, we could partially see her evolution. And as life forms emerged, we could see their cyclic evolutionary process. This is beyond our current capacity. That is why our astronomers are constantly searching for emerging stars, solar systems and planets, to eventually seek out and understand the universe’s and our own births, cycles and eventual deaths. We can see, at least partially, the evolutionary process at work in our human development through archeological and sociological studies. Due to man-made and natural disasters, these records are incomplete, but we can piece together a basic understanding of our past. At this point it would be wise to interject a thought.

Are you a believer in evolution as Darwin thought, or creationism as Christianity insists the Bible teaches? Are the terms mutually exclusive or are they compatible within the context of time and inadequate records? Is one right and the other wrong? Both right? Both wrong? Do you have a better theory? Can you prove it? Belief is not proof! Can I, or anyone else, disprove it? Even with proof, will either of us change our mind or will our personal belief prevail?

For the purposes of this discussion, I am naturally following an evolutionary theme, but do not deny the possibility of a creative act altering or modifying the life process. Since my word to describe God is “awesome”, It can do whatever It wants, whenever It wants! So *could* It? Sure! *Did* It? I do not know. Is it necessary that you or I know? No. Semantics.

We also cannot rule out the possibility that another nomadic or investigative extra-terrestrial life form interceded at some point (ala Star Trek). During the epoch of creation in Genesis 6:2 and 4, the Bible reads, “the sons of God went in unto the daughters of man.” Why the distinction? Were there two races or species? Since the heavens were where God lived, did ancient, perhaps primitive, man consider possible ET astronauts as gods descending from heaven? Were there only males? Women’s libbers



arise! Is this a possible “Divine Intervention” to a natural evolutionary process? Remember the record keepers used their personal references and idioms of speech to tell their stories. Are we listening with similar references and idioms? Too many unanswered and unanswerable question to get hung up on. We must simply make a mental note of an assumption and move on.

One of the most interesting themes to research astrologically is man’s consciousness and attendant behavior as it progresses through the ages by way of the precession of the equinoxes. If you have seen or read the book *Clan of the Cave Bear*, you can see the established primitive civilization giving way to an emerging civilization, which in time must have given way to the next phase of development. There was probably interbreeding between the races, largely but not necessarily produced by the men on the women. This is not a sexist judgment, but a natural process of life. Men were physically stronger and more naturally aggressive, more transient due to their job of providing food and safety. Men, therefore, had wider opportunity to encounter “others”. They were survival-oriented with barely out-of-the-animal stage motivation. Strong clan prohibitions and physical demands would suppress some but not necessarily all females, and probably not the more naturally aggressive males. Only women can bear the genetic offspring. And honestly, it is far easier for a male to force his attentions on a female than for a female to force her attentions on the male. A female will more likely seduce when driven sexually and not force unwanted demonstrations. Also, the prevailing culture would have developed or chosen the rules of behavior towards “others”, much as we do today.

This possible crossover or interbreeding would preserve some of the qualities of the outgoing culture and strengthen the incoming culture. If you were to physically move your home, you preserve the best to take with you and eliminate the rest. Early man was alternately territorial and nomadic. This is also true genetically and culturally. Each evolutionary step takes the best of what has gone before as its base and it grafts on the new, not always successfully or humanely, but life does progress.

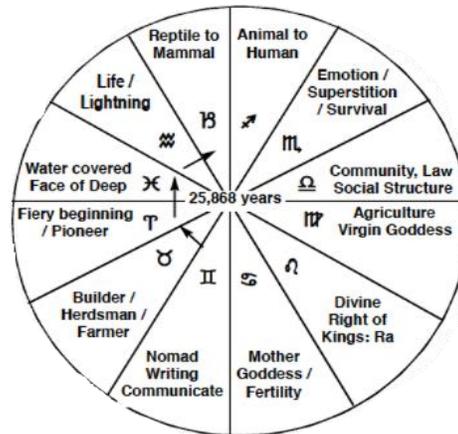
Primitive man may have been animalistic and bestial by today’s standards, living in a savage world. Life was hard and short; therefore, it was necessary to be self-centered as a matter of survival. What we know as civilization must have come from those early roots over thousands of years of evolution always with the possibility of Divine Intervention somewhere along the way. To me, God can do whatever God wants to do, wherever and whenever It wants. Occasionally, we still meet a genetic throwback of “unevolved, bestial man”. To study this process of developing culture, we can look at the records of past cultures, their myths and deities.

The World Ages We are currently entering or have entered the Age of Aquarius. In order to understand this new age we are entering (remember the paradigm shift from lesson one?), it is important to look at the ages that have gone before. As we have previously discussed, ancient man had all he could do to survive, and yet our current culture evolved from this original primitive behavior. In order to arrive at this current state of awareness, mankind had to develop gradually, through stages of evolution, much as the infant eventually develops into the (hopefully) mature adult. Even the scientific community acknowledges the ages but calls them “bronze”, “iron”, etc. We have both a history, partially known or reconstructed by our best guessers, and an hypothesized pre-history of man’s evolution. There are few tangible or written records, as writing is a fairly recent advance in skill, and only sketchy archeological records that are limited by our current ability to locate, identify and then decipher.

Theoretically, life as we know it in our universe and on our planet evolved in this way. The first and only element of creation was hydrogen. I wonder if we should worship hydrogen? Hydrogen was set in motion by the Creator (“and God said”) as the cosmic big bang. Do you suppose “the Word” was a shout? “Eureka” comes to mind! This single element through chemical reaction (possibly heat) produced the second element, helium. I am not knowledgeable about chemistry, but here is my explanation. These two elements, through their interaction, in turn created other elements that eventually produced life as we know it. The one created twoness, which gave rise to multiplicity. Chemical reaction of the propelled elements generated energy (male) and matter (female), traveled through and filled many (not all) areas of space (vast regions that look empty) through to gaseous nebulas and galaxies.

Some of these particles were magnetically attracted and collected together to form chemical structures of high energy and increasing density. As more matter was attracted (accretion) potential structures grew and attracted still more, eventually producing great bodies of hydrogen and its chemical reactions and matter (generated by the chemical reactions) eventually coalescing into stars and galaxies. During this process these stars also captured or produced smaller groups of matter as satellites (planets, moons, comets, etc.). How this actually occurred is constantly argued academically.

Did, for example, our local star, the Sun, give birth to the planets of its system, or were the planets simply larger masses of matter not captured by the Sun's superior magnetic field (ability to accrete)? Hydrogen, its companion, helium, and their eventual children (chemicals), fueled by the explosion (the Word?) were intensely hot, volatile and chaotic. The further the exploding molecules raced away from the area of the big bang, they gradually and comparatively cooled, allowing magnetism, accretion and collision to eventually coalesce them into some form of gas, vapor and finally matter. As our galaxy, our Sun, our planets and their satellites, etc. formed, they were intensely hot. Our world was largely molten, primitive and unstable. Through the cooling process (over billions of years), solidity started to occur. Because conditions were exactly right (coincidentally?), water vapor was attracted, produced, or part of the ongoing process. Water (H₂O) is two parts hydrogen and one part of one of its chemical reaction children, oxygen. With the relative cooling of the Sun and the Earth, some of the water remained, eventually covering much of the Earth's surface in one form or another. This early stage of Earth must have been unstable and vaporous. Further along in the cooling process, land and distinct bodies of water or ice formed.



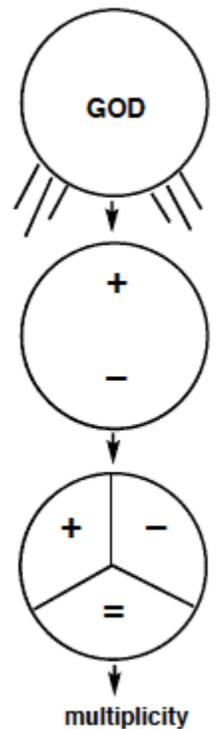
At this point the miraculous occurred and organic life began. Was it a natural stage of evolution or Divine Intervention? Lightning (fire) discharging in the waters created the first spark of life, the first microscopic organism. Recently, science, under laboratory conditions, was able to mimic the process, to create microscopic living molecules by discharging lightning into simulated primordial water. Again, through the process of evolution, mutation and further lightning discharge (natural and usual or Divine Intervention?) the living molecules formed increasingly complex organisms until the sea was full of living creatures of all shapes, forms and sizes. Eventually, this amphibian world adapted, mutated, evolved and crawled on shore to dry land, first as reptiles and eventually as mammals, again in a constantly changing variety of size, shape and complexity. Ancient Greek myths of creation depicted a race of monsters and giants fathered by the sky god Ouranus on Gaia or Mother Earth.

Before we go any further, what could be the sign of a fiery beginning, life being initiated through this cosmic furnace? How about Aries? Remember that the Ages precess (go backwards). The advent of vapor or water (from comets?) forming into seas on our primitive planet should remind you of Pisces. Again precessing, the creative masculine force (lightning) playing “upon the face of the waters” (feminine) should remind you of Aquarius, the ruler of lightning, usually symbolized by an Angel pouring the waters of life as wavy lines (lightning) from its jug containing the waters of life (not liquid water). Organic life began. The ancient symbol for Capricorn (the next sign by precession) was half fish and half hind (antelope) shown against the background of a shoreline, symbolizing the amphibian stage giving way to the reptilian / mammalian stage.

Remain aware that an Earth age is only 2155-60 years and that the stages of evolution we are describing took place over millions, even billions, of years. As life shows us, there are cycles within cycles, within cycles. For example, the roughly 26,000-year precessional cycle of our Solar System takes place with the 230-million-year galactic spin cycle, which in turn takes place within an even larger Super Galactic cycle. I read somewhere that one Great Year cycle was 930 million years. So our universe itself may have a cycle within the possible multiple universes, which I call the Multiverse.

The purpose of this discussion of the process of evolution with the analogy of zodiacal ages was to create a frame of reference for the orderly and somewhat predictable stages of growth that all life encounters. The astrological symbolism serves to illustrate that particular piece of the overall process regardless of the actual duration of the process. Also, since we are seeing progress by precession, contrary to our usual direct format of signs, it illustrates that a circle has no beginning and no end, and can begin and end anywhere that we agree upon. Progress occurs because we do a systematic process regardless of where we theorize that beginning and its implied end, and the direction taken.

With this information as our hypothesis, and temporarily agreeing upon but noting the assumptions we have made, it is not difficult to see the observable, repetitive cycles within all nature. It would not be difficult to use the information gained through the study of one cycle and apply it to the study of other cycles. Since the creation of all life by the Creator was out of the substance of the Creator Itself, it is implied that life would obey similar cycles or laws of growth and behavior. I am not speaking of man-made laws, but universal laws inherent in the nature of the Creator and Its Creations.



At the moment of the formation of the manifest universe, the Creator sent forth from itself Creation. Implied separation (the polarity of self / not self) occurred. This essential first division is called by various names: Yin / Yang by the oriental, male (dynamic / active) / female (receptive / passive), positive (+) and negative (-), energy and matter, time and space, light and dark, etc. On a universal scale, the Word (active) went forth into the void (receptive, undifferentiated primordial soup). “And God said, let there be light,” Genesis 1:3...”separating the light from the darkness” implying that darkness preceded the light. On an early scale, the lightning (electric, dynamic) discharging into the waters (magnetic, receptive) seeded the male fiery energy into the female watery womb to create what we know as earthly life.

Is it not possible that Earth itself is a living and sentient being going through stages of evolution much as any of its inhabitant life forms? Is it further possible that Earth is one part of a larger life involving the Sun, its planets, their moons, etc., and that perhaps the solar system itself is a conscious, evolving entity? Is this solar system part of an even larger entity? Does the ancients’ belief that we descended from Sirius, the Dog Star in the constellation of the Great Dog, ring true or does the theory that we are governed by higher consciousness entities from the Pleiades, the star formation called the seven weeping sisters located at 29 Taurus, have validity? And there are more stories and myths available.

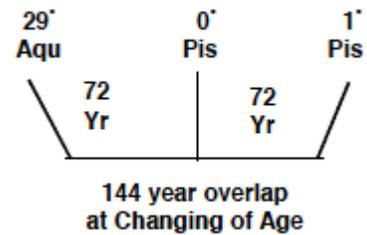
Is there a planetary, perhaps galactic, hierarchy (levels of accomplishment and governing) to evolution? Have those entities of superior consciousness and evolution passed through the same stages as mankind and our Earth are currently experiencing? Are those entities physical and vast as a planet, a star or a galaxy, or are they consciousness only? Does this potential hierarchy monitor or govern our growth and development? Is it a watcher only or does it co-create with Its Creation, as in Divine Intervention? What wonderful food for thought! Our quest for answers relating to consciousness usually generates more questions than it answers. Is this hierarchy, physical or consciousness only, evolving and in turn being governed by even higher levels within the hierarchy? Are these evolved beings or Judeo-Christian angels? Supposedly, angels are fabrications by the Creator who have never entered physical form. How many other life forms are there that we know nothing about? I told you that my word for God is “awesome”.

As previously mentioned, the actual date of the changing of each age is ambiguous. There are many contrary opinions by varying authors as to whether each age is equal in duration, when the ages start and the calendar used. *DeVore's Encyclopedia* gives a brief description by Charles Jayne of several methods of astronomical calculation. It is too technical for me to understand and explain as I am not a mathematician or a scientist, but it does show why the variation in dating can occur. There is one point about the changing of the ages that should be made.

There are no clear lines or fences between the signs or between the ages. Just as the Aquarius / Pisces section of space is open, allowing one energy to flow into the other, so do the Ages flow one into the other, without the necessity of a clear date or event. The mean or average age is 2155-60 years per sign, divided by 30 degrees per sign or about 72 years per degree. The ages precess, so the last degree of the Age of Pisces would be 1° to 0°. The degrees precess (travel backward) as do the signs. The first degree of the Age of Aquarius would be 30-29°. Since each degree represents 72 years and there are no clear lines marking each sign, there is an overlapping that will occur during the opening and closing degrees of the signs and the years they represent, a cuspal influence. That would mean that for 144 years (2 degrees x 72 years) we would be under the influence of both Pisces and Aquarius. As time progresses, Pisces energy will diminish and be absorbed, and Aquarian energy will emerge stronger and better defined.

Further, when an age changes, we will be experiencing the death of the current cycle and the simultaneous birth of the new cycle. If you have ever experienced either birth or death, both can be traumatic. To experience both simultaneously on the evolutionary scale of an Age could produce chaos, mixed messages, confusion and conflict between the status quo (the old age) and progress (the new age). Does this sound familiar? Is it necessary to know which year is exact when the transition itself is 144 years?

Returning to our view of the changing ages, once the precession passed from Capricorn into Sagittarius, symbolized by the centaur (half horse, half man), the evolutionary phase would show the evolving of the animal to human form and consciousness. The part of the symbol that is the archer aiming for the heavens would show man's emergence from the unconscious beast state (body), consciously aiming for the higher state of self-awareness (head).



Ancient man faced almost insurmountable odds. As the precession passed into Scorpio, the need for ecological survival developed man's cunning, his desire to possess or accumulate, appropriate, pool or exchange skills, assets and resources. His desires, vengeful nature and procreative urges had to be mastered so his emotional body could be formed. Early in the formation of the Earth / Moon pair, the Moon looked incredibly large because it was much closer to us. By astrological analogy, emotions would have been very strong, and possibly largely uncontrolled. Awareness or awe of the death state could move a superstitious, primitive culture to develop death or funeral / burial rites, relics and sacrifices.

Moving into the Age of Libra, the need arose to balance those warring factions. Relationship needs emerged, the taking of mates, the developing of a society or culture no matter how primitive, creating a sense of community with rules of conduct and balanced judgment. Probably the earliest archeological records that show a sense of relating or community collective are from Libra's influence. Rudimentary awareness of male / female energy or an emerging sense of beauty could have encouraged our earliest art objects.

In the Age of Virgo, man may have changed from primarily a meat eater to a partial vegetarian state. This diet could have included more vegetables, fruits, nuts and grains. He may have gone from merely collecting what was available to organizing or structuring his food supply. Perhaps his shelters improved and he formed rudimentary work details, with assigned jobs. Ancient man may have been largely ignorant of fertility and genetics and did not necessarily recognize the roles in procreation. The general belief could have been that the females produced the children by themselves. The children, therefore, may have belonged to the women of the tribe. The religious symbols and myths gave rise to virgin (Virgo) goddesses who had children without benefit of a male consort. Statues of pregnant women or female fertility symbols might be common.

When precession moved into the sign of Leo, man's divinity and attendant ego problems emerged. Male energy was exalted, his superior physical strength and aggressiveness made him lord of his realm and he stretched his rule over all he encountered. The divine right of kings prevailed. It is thought that this could be the backdrop for the Atlantean civilization of which we have heard so much. I personally have a recollection of a life as an Atlantean, but that "proves" nothing. Supposedly, the downfall of the culture of Atlantis was an overbearing and uncontrolled arrogance towards life and the environment. Their destruction was probably caused by misuses of crystal energy, which collects, magnifies and directs sunlight, and which resulted in inundation (water). Watch the polarities (the sign opposite Leo is Aquarius) – our emerging now.

As precession entered the sign of Cancer, stories of a massive flood are found in cultures all over the world. Though there is some interesting research out there, it is not possible to date the flood precisely at this time, nor to know whether there were one or many floods because many enormous floods were recorded by ancient civilizations. Remember, communication was limited. What happened in one part of the world may not have been known to other parts of the world. Is it one legend or many? The womb of creation, fertility and mother goddess again prevailed. Earth had to be repopulated, family or community structures rebuilt. As with most of the female signs, energy would tend to preserve (cocoon), cultivate and fertilize, rather than the male forms of aggression, dynamic projection and conquering.

The precession entered the sign of Gemini, the twins. The emphasis of human development changed to the development of intelligence and communication skills. This age would probably produce the earliest forms of a written or pictorial language. Pictorial languages use actual forms (i.e., a person walking or pointing). Written languages would use agreed-upon symbolism for letters or numbers. Pairs of gods / goddesses were worshiped (father / daughter, mother / son, sister / brother, twins, etc.). Gemini is a masculine sign, so spreading the culture and not necessarily maintaining it was the theme. Man became the wanderer, the nomad (the polarity is Sagittarius).

When the precession entered Taurus, worship of the bull emerged. Our history is filled with symbols of the fatted calf, Mithras, Egyptian deities with human bodies and the heads of animals, and bullhorns. With Taurus being a feminine energy, man (the nomad) again clustered into communities to preserve what had been gained and he / she fenced and created storage of perishables. Man became the herdsman and the cultivator of the soil and the practical needs of life had priority. The previous age of the intellectual and the wanderer / explorer passed into history. Although we have archeological records of the wanderers, spreaders of population, they are scattered and incomplete. Emphasis on sexuality is shown through the Taurus polarity – Scorpio.

When the precession entered the sign of Aries, the masculine, fiery energy again commanded that mankind push out into experience and not remain huddled together for safety. Acts of war and aggression were the signature and male dynasties took command. Barriers were removed, by force if necessary, and life expanded. The gentler arts were bullied into submission. Faith was in leadership skills, physical courage and might - not management or maintenance. Egypt and Pharaoh bloomed, and other cultures produced military leaders and expeditions. When Moses came

down from the mountain carrying the Ten Commandments, he found the masses were still worshipping a golden calf, symbol of the dying age (the past). Moses destroyed the calf with the tablets, symbol of the new faith and belief. It was the symbolic destruction of the Age of Taurus, the bull. This is a culture with many archeological and historical artifacts. Increasingly, we are more able to reconstruct their culture and values. This Aries polarity is Libra, the builder of law and societal rules.

When the precession entered the sign of Pisces, we again returned to the feminine, watery influence. It is thought that this is the age in which we now live, having lasted thus far about 2000+ years. Each Age produces its spiritual leader or Avatar. The Age of Pisces gave us Jeshua ben Joseph, Jeshua the son of Joseph, whom we know as Jesus. He replaced the practice of blood sacrifice (lambs or baby sheep representing Aries and doves) through his willingness to serve as a sacrifice himself (Pisces). He emphasized love, service and devotion as the path to God, and refused military might or bloodshed in the name of his faith and his God. His message is filled with rich symbolism, feeding the multitudes on bread (Virgo) and fishes (Pisces); calling his disciples saying, "Come, I will make you fishers of men." The identification symbol for early Christianity was a fish. His Mother, the Virgin Mary (the polarity, Virgo), is revered throughout Christianity. The age was feminine, devotional and sacrificial. Holy wars have been waged in the name of a gentle person who taught love. The followers, not the Avatar, have been fanatical, devotional and misguided. Mankind has learned new skills, art forms, manipulation, guilt, sacrifice, and (hopefully) empathy, compassion and faith, plus lots and lots of rules.

Now, back to our question on the timing of the beginning of an Age. Was Jesus born on the actual year, or as a part of the new age and its teaching and the actual year is not important? It has been 2017 years as I write this, if the birth of the Avatar of the Piscean Age is the pivotal moment. Because of the changing calendars (common) and the choice of zero year between B.C. and A.D., it is thought by historical records that he was born closer to 7 B.C. The world zero birth year is seriously in question and that could add to the problem deciding when the initiation of an age would occur.

According to the Bible, the second coming of the Avatar, or as fundamental Christianity believes, the man-God Jesus, will occur "when the sign of man appears in the sky". Astrologers have always taken this to mean when the precession enters Aquarius. Christians believe Jesus will mysteriously and unexpectedly appear in the clouds to claim his bride, the

faithful. Since we are entering or have recently entered the Age of Aquarius, there is much speculation as to the date, hence the confusion of opinion. Metaphysicians look to the Avatar as a principle of consciousness, and not necessarily a specific entity.

What if the sign of man appearing in the sky is the technological ability of man to leave the physical earth and enter space, the heavens? Man has already left his mark in space, first when the Chinese launched firework rockets and later with the discovery of air flight. Man had tried and failed countless other times. We have progressed to monster rockets that hurl military missiles, space probes, satellites, stations and manned pioneering efforts into the heavens. Local space is starting to fill up with our attempts and debris. Two of our exploring probes have passed the heliopause, the limit of the Sun's gravitational pull. To me, the sign of man is already in the sky. In typical feminine Piscean fashion, these are claimed as defense- and research-oriented, but sacrifice is not an unusual part of the process.

Have we entered the Age of Aquarius already? Certainly the technological advances since the mid-1800s would qualify as Uranian in nature. The development of the human consciousness and the ability for invention is very mental, not emotional. In fact, the claim for stress on modern man is that we have become technologically superior, but have lost our gentler virtues, meaning and faith. Is this a statement that we are: 1) already into the new age with the old age dying, or 2) in that no-man's land of 144 years in which the dying energies of the Age of Pisces must give way to the birthing energies of the Age of Aquarius? Many authors feel we will not enter into Aquarius for about 400-600 years. Are you a tropical astrologer or a sidereal astrologer? There is no provable way to answer these questions. And I honestly don't think there is any value in getting hung up in them. We should learn to work with what we have.

To me, it is enough to know that we stand on the threshold of the change and that we, as Souls, have volunteered to be here during this time of crisis and transition. We may have made this decision for our own need and benefit, or because we honestly felt we could contribute to or be of assistance in the change. Mankind is in the throes of the crisis and can use all the help we can muster. We individually will grow through whatever the process or its outcome is. That we consciously choose to do so is the mark or measure of our personal evolution. Your part in this is personal, individual and a matter of opinion or conjecture. Evolutionally, your conscious decision to participate, even when it can be uncomfortable, indicates that you have turned the corner of ignorant or unconscious development and are turning back towards the Source. You are going to



To Fly Free in Space
Credit: STS-41B, NASA

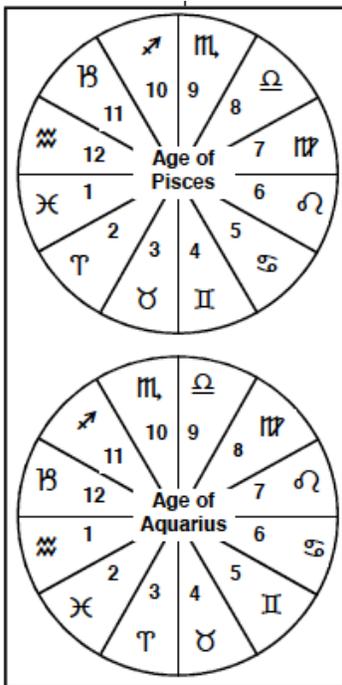
Explanation: At about 100 meters from the cargo bay of the space shuttle Challenger, Bruce McCandless II was further out than anyone had ever been before. Guided by a Manned Maneuvering Unit (MMU), astronaut McCandless, pictured above, was floating free in space. McCandless and fellow NASA astronaut Robert Stewart were the first to experience such an "untethered space walk" during Space Shuttle mission 41-B in 1984. The MMU works by shooting jets of nitrogen and has since been used to help deploy and retrieve satellites. With a mass over 140 kilograms, an MMU is heavy on earth, but, like everything, is weightless in space. The MMU was replaced with the SAFER backpack propulsion unit.

retrace your steps and encounter the debris of your past (karma), attempting to the best of your ability to rebalance and harmonize your energy. This is a personal trek unlike any other. It is one that must be taken willingly and yet one that cannot be avoided once begun. Discomfort does not matter. You have turned the corner in your consciousness and your own path is what lies in front of you. You are progressing, no matter how the experience appears. And so is mankind.

As we look around us, we see proof of man's growth and man's folly. It will be the measure of the evolutionary progress of the species to see how we handle what we have produced. Mankind is now facing its own invention. Will we claim responsibility to repair and balance what we have done or will we be sacrificed on the altar of our own foolishness? Should any of the predicted global crises occur, we will call it the wrath of God rather than by its correct title: the stupidity of man.

We are in an age of crisis, whether it be produced by the natural evolutionary cycle of the changing of the ages or self-induced. Perhaps what we have come to in this time of global crisis is what the changing of the ages indicates. This is a critical time in the intellectual process of the species and the Earth. We were given stewardship of a planet of resources. The planet as a life force willingly gave us a place to experience. We have inflicted tremendous pain and destruction on this planet. Will the planet die? Will it renege and rebel against its original offer of that gift? Will it attempt to rebalance and heal itself by throwing off its disease (mankind)? Even more important, what has the consciousness of the planet learned in the process? Has the planet itself evolved?

The planet is a member or organ of an even larger entity called the solar system. What will that entity endure in the name of human progress? Will we be allowed to fill our local space with weapons and debris, or to threaten the very existence and equilibrium or evolution of this system? Since the system is a small cell in the gigantic structure called our galaxy, what effect can we have in this enormous scheme? Is anyone watching? Will anyone interfere? Can we be stopped, healed, taught in time or will we go the way of other species that have been unable to adapt or to modify their behavior? What is currently alive on the globe is a small fragment of what has previously evolved. Many life form steps on the evolutionary ladder have died, and yet the Earth goes on. Please do not limit your thinking to your own personal evolution or even that of mankind. Extend that thinking to include larger dimensions of evolution. This planet, this solar system, our galaxy, our universe, the multiverse – creation itself. See all those with the context of a gradually evolving, and hopefully progressing series of measurable cycles. This is the theme and theory of hieratic evolution.



The effect of the cycle of precession on human experience is easier to plot with the use of a house wheel. Place the age sign in question on the ascendant, and then place the signs in counter-clockwise order in the houses themselves. The ascendant sign denotes the overall lesson of the entire age. Each age has a twelve-part unfolding process of the nature of that age through the twelve zodiac sign segments shown on the example wheels. For example, on the diagram, the Age of Pisces has Pisces on the Ascendant (1st house) energy, Aries for value systems (2nd house), Taurus for communication (3rd house), etc. The Age of Aquarius has Aquarius on the 1st, Pisces has moved to the 2nd, Aries has moved to the 3rd, etc.

Look at standard house affairs, colored by the nature of the sign. This will tell you the overall social / political / religious / cultural developmental influences and attitudes. Draw a wheel for each age you wish to study. The ascendant would be the hour hand of this clock, with transits and aspects providing the minute hand. Use all tools available to you in the study of astrology: fixed stars, major and minor aspects, major configurations, the Saros lunar cycle, etc.

None of us is an island. While we are individually responsible for the success or failure of our own lives, we are a part of a larger whole called the race of man, which in turn is part of the planet, the solar system, etc. Whether or not we like the action or the result does not excuse us from our personal part in the evolution of the whole. The whole will evolve on the individual efforts of its parts.

Decanates / Dwads / Terms / Faces

To see an age in its entirety requires some fine-tuning. A 2155-60-year cycle is too big a piece on which to chew. We shall need to 1) break this time frame into smaller and more manageable pieces, and 2) show the effect of the cycle on the various categories of human experience.

Decanates Several methods exist for breaking traditional signs into smaller segments such as decanates and dwads. There are also some older, lesser-known methods called terms and faces. Examine the sign Aries as an example. We can take any sign of 30° and break it down into three 10° segments called decanates with planetary sub-rulers. There are several methods, the most well-known of which would be that Aries, being the

first of the fire triplicity, would have Aries / Aries as the first decanate, Aries / Leo as the second decanate and Aries / Sagittarius as the third decanate. Aries / Aries is ruled by Mars and sub-ruled by Mars or Mars / Mars. Aries / Leo is ruled by Mars and sub-ruled by the Sun or Mars / Sun. Aries / Sagittarius is ruled by Mars and sub-ruled by Jupiter or Mars / Jupiter. Repeat!

1st Decanate	2nd Decanate	3rd Decanate
0-10° Aries	10-20° Aries	20-30° Aries
Aries / Aries	Aries / Leo	Aries / Sagittarius
Mars / Mars	Mars / Sun	Mars / Jupiter
Card / Card	Card / Fixed	Card / Mutable

Each of these sub-sections of the sign would show the characteristics of the ruler and sub-ruler, but still within the context of the original sign energy. Mars / Mars (cardinal / cardinal) would be far more aggressive, forceful and dynamic, Mars / Sun (cardinal / fixed) would show more dignity, power and glory, Mars / Jupiter (cardinal / mutable) would be more exploratory or philosophical in nature. While there are other decanate systems, this is the most common and the easiest to illustrate.

Thinking in terms of human development and evolution, this distinction could be traced to cultural progression, religious values, methods of governing covering around 720 years (2155 or 2160 years ÷ 3 decanates). *Note the December 21, 2020 Jupiter / Saturn conjunction in Aquarius starting a new cycle of 720 years.*

Dwads are 2 1/2° segments of each sign, twelve of which (one complete zodiac) add up to 30°. Dwad is short for dwadashamsha from Indian astrological tradition. Again using Aries as our example:

0 - 2 1/2 = Aries	2 1/2 - 5 = Taurus	5 - 7 1/2 = Gemini
7 1/2 - 10 = Cancer	10 - 12 1/2 = Leo	12 1/2 - 15 = Virgo
15 - 17 1/2 = Libra	17 1/2 - 20 = Scorpio	20 - 22 1/2 = Sagittarius
22 1/2 - 25 = Capricorn	25 - 27 1/2 = Aquarius	27 1/2 - 30 = Pisces

You will note that the Aries / Leo dwad matches the beginning of the Leo decanate and the 20-22 1/2 dwad is the beginning of the Sagittarius decanate. Each of the signs can be broken down in this manner. Each dwad would correspond to about 180 years (2155-2160 ÷ 12). The Age of Aries would progress in a twelve-fold process, more or less corresponding in timing and temperament according to the sign ruler (2155-2160 years), the

decanate sub-ruler (720 years) and the dwad sub-sub-ruler (180 years). Seen in this light, the underlying orderly unfolding of human consciousness is visible regardless of the outer experience, yet can be seen in that experience. This is an area of research and study if you are interested in human and hieratic development. So much to learn!

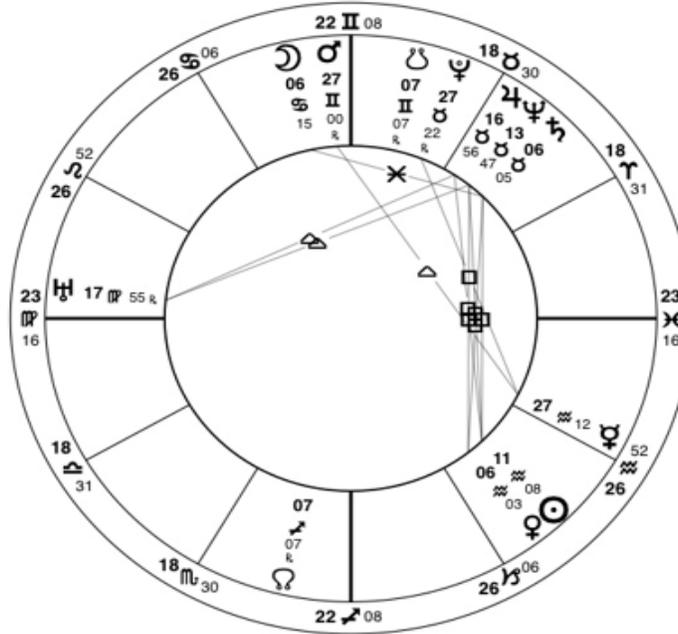
A point to consider: 0° Aries as the beginning of the zodiac has not always been the case. When and under what basis were the original rules of astrology generated? Much material that we use today was generated when Taurus was considered as the first sign of the zodiac. The 15th degree of fixed signs and the fixed stars located at those points were considered to be royal stars. The four Lords of Karma (also known as the four Horseman of the Apocalypse) reside at the four 15° fixed locations. For example: the four Lords of Karma were considered to be in incarnation during World War II. The potential players are:

- Franklin Delano Roosevelt born January 30, 1882, 8:45 PM LMT Hyde Park, NY (Aquarius USA)
- Adolph Hitler, April 20, 1889, 6:30 PM LMT, Braunau am Inn, Austria (Taurus Germany)
- Prince Michi Hirohito, born April 29, 1901, 10:10 PM JST, Tokyo, Japan (Taurus Emperor, Japan).
- Benito Mussolini born July 29, 1883, 1:08 PM LMT, Preciappio, Italy (Leo Italy). The Rodden data base shows a 2 PM time and rates it AA. Both charts follow. (*Where is Scorpio? Mussolini has Scorpio rising.*)
- Joseph Stalin, born December 6, 1878 Julian, Dec 18 Gregorian* *calendar in effect at birth*, time unknown LMT, Gori, Russia (now Georgia, Caucasus). He had Mars in Scorpio.
- Hideki Tojo, Japan's General during the war, born December 30, 1884, Tokyo, no time (noonmark used). He had one planet in Taurus.

And here are their charts:

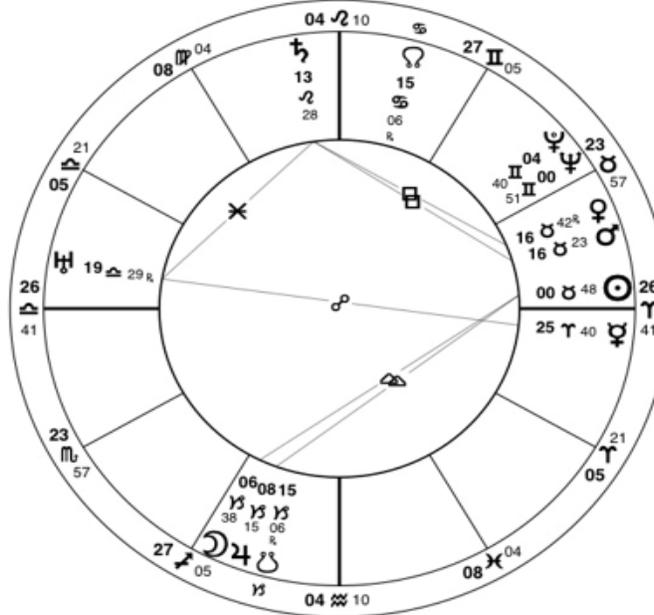
Franklin D Roosevelt

Natal Chart
Monday, January 30, 1882
8:45:00 PM LMT
Hyde Park, New York
Tropical Placidus True Node



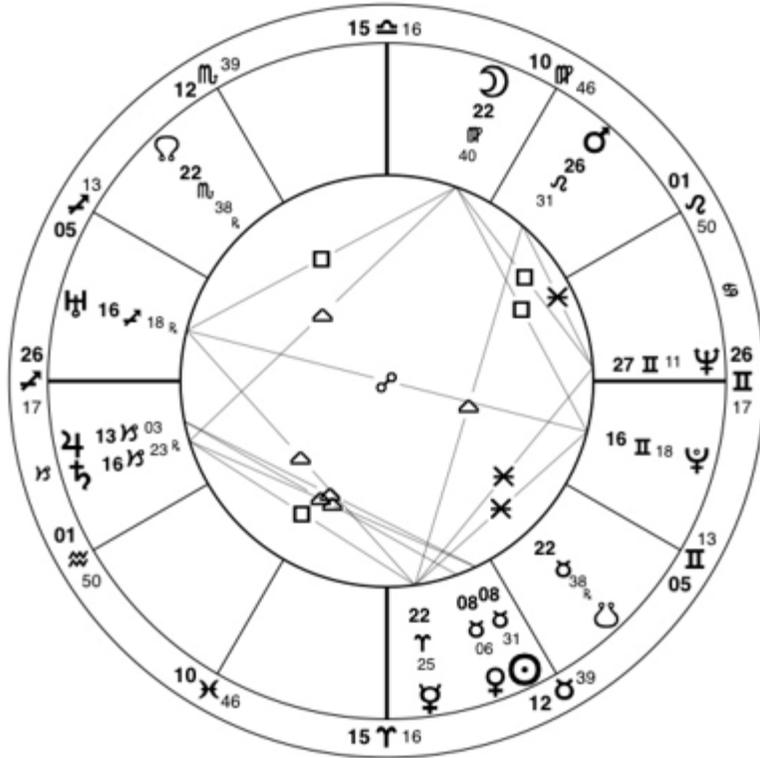
Adolph Hitler

Natal Chart
Saturday, April 20, 1889
6:30:00 PM LMT
Braunau am Inn, Austria
Tropical Placidus True Node



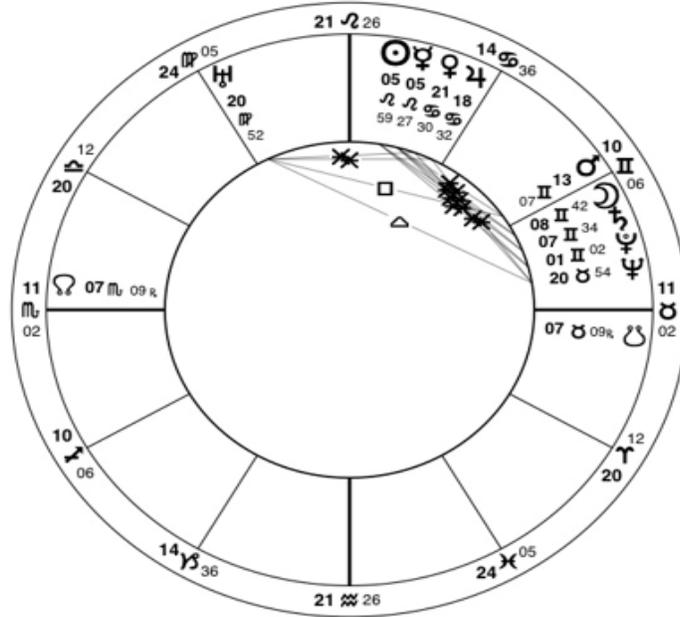
Emperor Hirohito

Natal Chart
Monday, April 29, 1901
10:10:00 PM JST
Tokyo, Japan
Tropical Placidus True Node



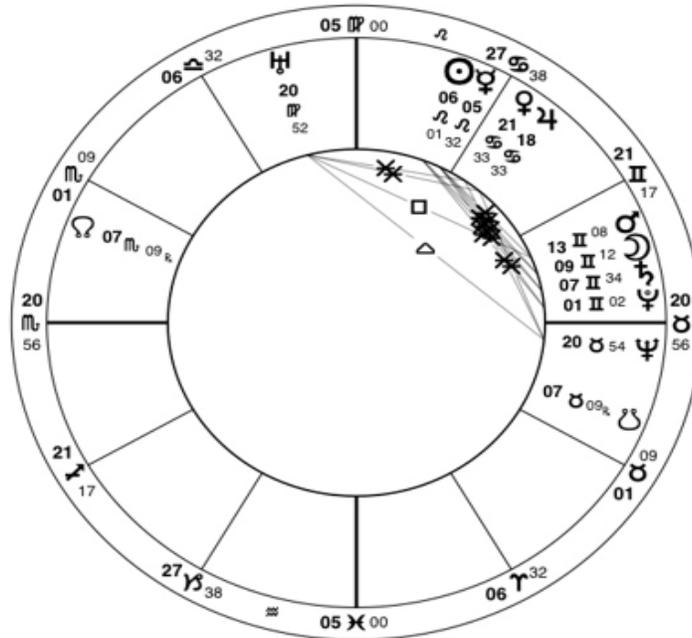
Benito Mussolini (Cummings)

Natal Chart
Sunday, July 29, 1883
1:08:00 PM LMT
Predappio, Italy
Tropical Placidus True Node



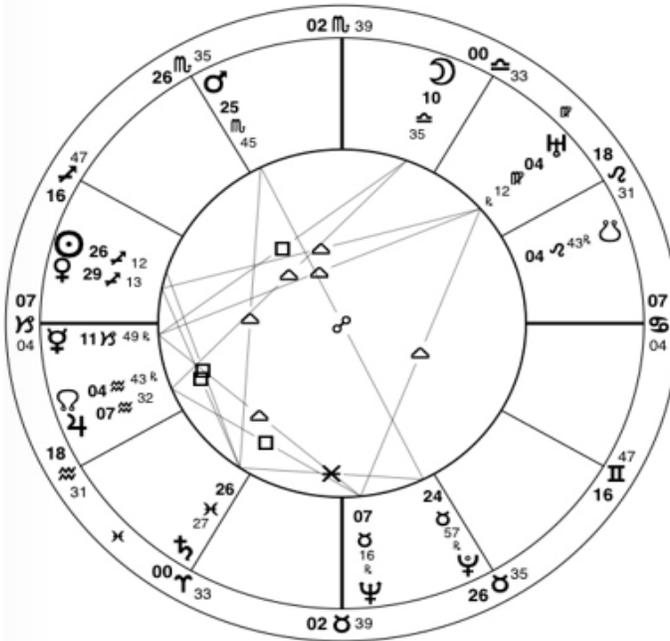
Benito Mussolini

Natal Chart
Sunday, July 29, 1883
2:00:00 PM LMT
Predappio, Italy
Tropical Placidus True Node



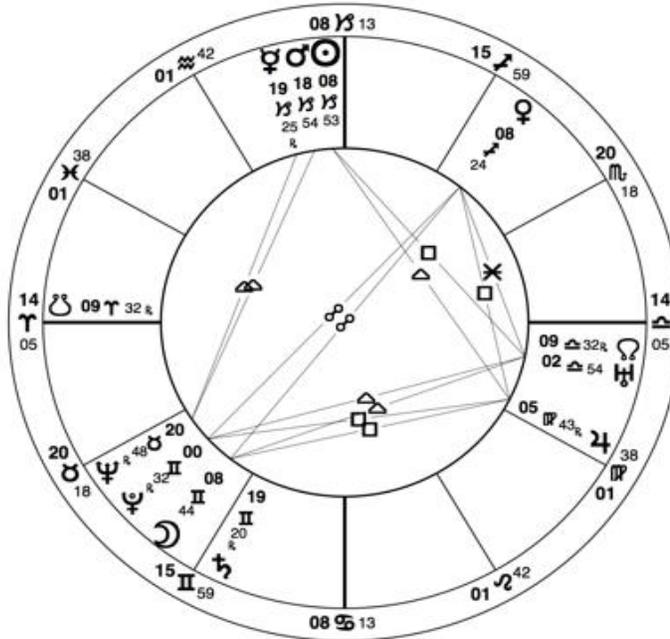
Joseph Stalin 1878

Natal Chart
Wednesday, December 18, 1878
8:15:00 AM LMT
Gori, Russia
Tropical Placidus True Node



Hideki Tojo

Natal Chart
Tuesday, December 30, 1884
12:00:00 PM LMT
Tokyo, Japan
Tropical Placidus True Node



Faces Lesser known are the terms and faces of the planets and their signs. The original work I encountered on faces was Ptolemy's, using a system which is based on a house position of a planet. Alan Leo felt there were six 5° divisions of a sign which he called the faces, but which appear to me to be half-decanates. Three general examples are given in DeVore's *Encyclopedia of Astrology*. I have encountered no other material and have never thoroughly explored it. I offer it here to keep your notes complete.

Terms of the planets are described in DeVore's *Encyclopedia*, showing both the Ptolemaic and Egyptian tables. A table of such rulerships is required for both the Ptolemaic and Egyptian methods, and each table is listed below. Ptolemy gave degree influence to the five inner planets, but not the Sun nor the Moon. The malefics Mars or Saturn influenced the final degrees of all signs. Dividing 2155-60 years by five planets gives 431 years per term.

Ptolemaic Table (0°0' to 29°59')

Aries	0-5°59' ♃	6-13°59' ♀	14-20°59' ♁	21-25°59' ♂	26-29°59' ♃
Taurus	0-7°59' ♀	8-14°59' ♁	15-21°59' ♃	22-25°59' ♃	26-29°59' ♂
Gemini	0-6°59' ♁	7-13°59' ♃	14-20°59' ♀	21-24°59' ♃	25-29°59' ♂
Cancer	0-5°59' ♂	6-12°59' ♃	13-19°59' ♁	20-26°59' ♀	27-29°59' ♃
Leo	0-5°59' ♃	6-12°59' ♀	13-18°59' ♀	19-24°59' ♃	25-29°59' ♂
Virgo	0-6°59' ♁	7-12°59' ♀	13-17°59' ♃	18-23°59' ♃	24-29°59' ♂
Libra	0-5°59' ♃	6-10°59' ♀	11-18°59' ♃	19-23°59' ♁	24-29°59' ♂
Scorpio	0-5°59' ♂	6-13°59' ♃	14-20°59' ♀	21-26°59' ♁	27-29°59' ♃
Sagittarius	0-7°59' ♃	8-13°59' ♀	14-18°59' ♁	19-24°59' ♃	25-29°59' ♂
Capricorn	0-5°59' ♀	6-11°59' ♁	12-18°59' ♃	19-24°59' ♂	25-29°59' ♃
Aquarius	0-5°59' ♃	6-11°59' ♁	12-19°59' ♀	20-24°59' ♃	25-29°59' ♂
Pisces	0-7°59' ♀	8-13°59' ♃	14-19°59' ♁	20-25°59' ♂	26-29°59' ♃

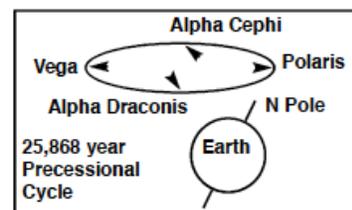
The Egyptian tables varied in the number of degrees of influence and the order. The last Term is also either Saturn or Mars.

Egyptian Table (0°0' to 29°59')

Aries	0-5°59' ♀	6-11°59' ♀	12-19°59' ♀	20-24°59' ♂	25-29°59' ♀
Taurus	0-7°59' ♀	8-13°59' ♀	14-21°59' ♀	22-26°59' ♀	27-29°59' ♂
Gemini	0-5°59' ♀	6-11°59' ♀	12-16°59' ♀	17-23°59' ♂	24-29°59' ♀
Cancer	0-6°59' ♂	7-12°59' ♀	13-18°59' ♀	19-25°59' ♀	26-29°59' ♀
Leo	0-5°59' ♀	6-10°59' ♀	11-17°59' ♀	18-23°59' ♀	24-29°59' ♂
Virgo	0-6°59' ♀	7-16°59' ♀	17-20°59' ♀	21-27°59' ♂	28-29°59' ♀
Libra	0-5°59' ♀	6-13°59' ♀	14-20°59' ♀	21-27°59' ♀	28-29°59' ♂
Scorpio	0-6°59' ♂	7-10°59' ♀	11-18°59' ♀	19-23°59' ♀	24-29°59' ♀
Sagittarius	0-11°59' ♀	12-16°59' ♀	17-20°59' ♀	21-25°59' ♀	26-29°59' ♂
Capricorn	0-6°59' ♀	7-13°59' ♀	14-21°59' ♀	22-25°59' ♀	26-29°59' ♂
Aquarius	0-6°59' ♀	7-12°59' ♀	13-19°59' ♀	20-24°59' ♀	25-29°59' ♂
Pisces	0-11°59' ♀	12-15°59' ♀	16-18°59' ♀	19-27°59' ♂	28-29°59' ♀

Looking at these time periods can further show the systematic processing of life through experience. Probably the best application of the terms can be found in James Robeson's *Fixed Stars*, pages 220-222 [2]. As an example, he breaks up the movement of the Royal fixed star Regulus in its progression through the sign of Leo, indicating both time periods and socio / political or religious development based on terms. According to that timetable given, Regulus recently crossed into Virgo.

Other Age influences - Our Pole Star What other factors might contribute to an age that would be different from other ages? During an astrological study of fixed stars, I stumbled across a piece of interesting, lesser-known information. As our north pole traces out its wobbly approximately 26,000-year circle in the sky, it points most directly to a fixed star that we call our pole star. Common knowledge leads us to believe that there is only one pole star, but this is not true. During that 26,000-year cycle, we will approach, perfect, and recede from four different major pole stars, each governing about 6,500 years of the complete cycle. The four major fixed stars, which alternate for the title of pole star, are Vega, Alpha Draconis, Alpha Cephi and Polaris - each in turn holds the title. Purportedly, the pole star has a tremendous influence on the Earth's (and its inhabitants) evolutionary development.



Going back to our analogy of Earth's pointers, see Earth's north pole as a soda straw, pointed generally towards a star, gradually perfecting its alignment with this star, and then gradually moving away and towards its rendezvous with the next pole star. As the straw points directly towards the pole star, the influence of that star is funneled directly into the Earth without interference. Because of its direct line of influence, the closer the alignment, the stronger the concentration or effect of the pole star energy.

At present, Polaris (which we call the North Star), is our pole star. Our north pole (the soda straw) is moving to its best alignment with Polaris in 2095 A.D., off perfect alignment by only 26'30", or less than ½ a degree. It will then slowly recede from the alignment as it begins to move to the next pole star (which will be Alpha Cephi) about 6500 years in the future. In 1990, Polaris was listed at 28 Gemini 25, moving approximately +8.2' every ten years. The closest we can move to an exact alignment (conjunct) is 26'30". Assuming that 00 Cancer 00 is the conjunction point (because that seems to be where it is headed), less the 26'30", the best obtainable position in 2095 is 29 Gemini 33'30". Declination is around 89 north. The 1990 position was so close – only 1°8'30" off, and moving closer every day.

Only one period during a 6,500-year framework draws in the strongest potential influence of the pole star. We are now within that period. As the alignment perfects itself, the influence will grow stronger. By 2000, our alignment with Polaris moved 8.2' closer, placing us within the 1° orb of effect used by astrologers for fixed star alignments. The influence promised by the pole star is being directly channeled into our polar receiving station, even now. I am a strong supporter of the environment, and I know that global warming is a key issue at the time of this final rewrite. However, do you suppose energy, magnetism, vibration, or cosmic influence by Polaris may have anything to do with the depletion of the ozone layer near the poles? Or the distortion of the Aurora Borealis (the northern lights)? Or the warming of Earth's south pole and the breakup of the large ice mass in the Antarctic? As I re-edited this page at the end of 2007, the alignment with Polaris was 28 Gemini 39, within the 1° orb allowed for aspecting, gradually drawing into the best possible alignment. We are here because we belong here at this time. What can you do to help?

Set age wheels, speculate, if you have computer capability, look for major aspects, transitions, eclipse cycles, etc. Read, practice, and share what you generate. The possibilities are rich, the material sparse. Write a book or at least educate one other astrologer who might eventually write such a book. Where to begin? Look again at the Age of Pisces and Age of Aquarius house wheels. Using your general house knowledge, think of how each Age would enact the house sign suggestions.

Recommended for hieratic research and reading:

- [1] Nicholas DeVore, *Encyclopedia of Astrology*
- [2] Robeson, *Fixed Stars*
- [3] Dane Rudhyar, *Astrological Timing*
- [4] Elizabeth C. Prophet, *The Great White Brotherhood*

Retrogrades and Reincarnation

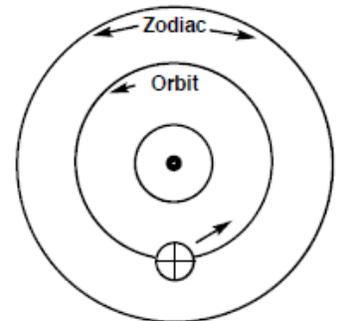
*Heliocentric, Geocentric, Parallax, Perspective
Retrogrades and Stations of Inner and Outer Planets
Lunar Nodes, Karmic Implications*

Retrograde motion is the apparent backward motion of the eight planets in our solar family. The Sun and Moon are not, nor will they ever be, listed as retrograde. Before we look at the esoteric (known to the few) meaning of retrograde motion, let us look at the exoteric (known to the many) picture - the observable motion of a planet in its retrograde pattern. While we are examining this exoteric picture, we will explore the difference between actual and apparent motion.

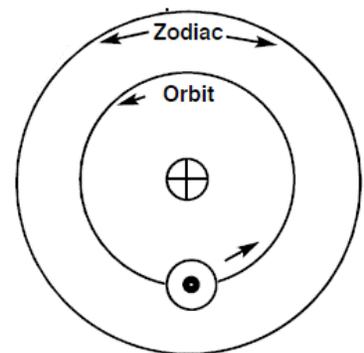
Heliocentric Within our solar system, all planets orbit the Sun at a fixed, yet somewhat irregular distance, at an average speed and in a single direction (forward). They cover their particular orbital paths in a predictable time frame. Actual motion is Sun-centered (heliocentric). On the heliocentric motion diagram, note that each planet circles the Sun, traveling only forward in an individual orbital path. At no time does a planet physically come to a screeching halt, contemplate its actions and reverse its direction. If that were to happen, we would have chaos in the heavens and there is already enough of that on Earth.

Geocentric We will create a change in perspective by placing the Earth at the center, and allowing the Sun and all the planets to appear to orbit the Earth (geocentric motion). Actual motion of the planets around the Sun has not been altered. However, we do see that motion in a completely different framework. From this Earth-centered (geocentric) perspective, the planets at times appear to slow, stop their forward or direct motion in the sky, move backwards, again slow and stop their backward motion, and then resume their forward motion. This is an optical illusion created by:

- 1) the orbit of the planet and its relative speed in comparison with another orbiting body, and / or
- 2) the movement of the planet in relationship to the Sun from our earthly perspective.

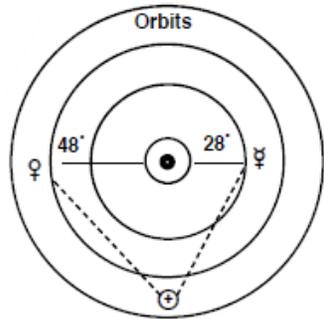
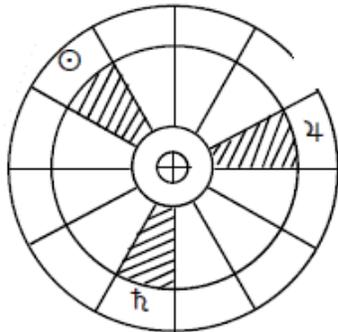
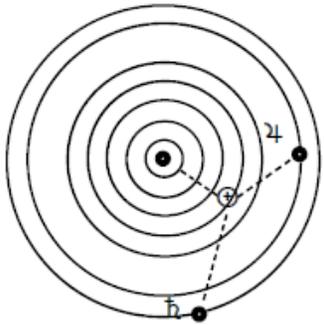
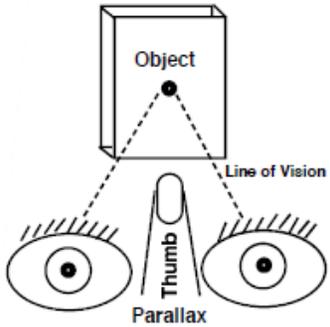


Heliocentric motion



Geocentric motion

Parallax Locate a small, immovable object such as a doorknob in your room. Close one eye and hold up your hand so your thumb covers the object. Hold your hand steady in that position and do not physically move. Open your closed eye and close your other eye. You will notice that your thumb no longer covers the object, even though you have not physically moved and the object itself has not moved. What has occurred is a small shift in perspective depending on how close you were to the object being viewed, perhaps partially influenced by the quality of your eyesight. Try blinking back and forth between open and closed eyes to repeat the shift in perspective. Do not give yourself eyestrain. If you arbitrarily consider your left eye closed as the helio perspective and your right eye closed as the geo perspective, you can easily see there was a shift in your perception of the object. You did not see the object from exactly the same viewpoint as you shifted your eye focus. Moving planets from a helio to a geo reference is not a small shift in perspective - it is a substantial shift.



Even though the bodies in question have not physically moved, angular relationships are measured from Earth's, not the Sun's, perspective. Why? The Sun perspective is good for all planets at all times, too generic for personal astrological delineation. We need to know what is going on here in our physical location, our Earth at the longitude and latitude of birth. Having said that, heliocentric astrology is a real, useful, applicable technique of its own.

Planet Arrangement Look at the diagrams provided, heliocentric to geocentric view, to see the changing perspective of a Earth / Sun / Saturn / Jupiter aspect. Stare at (study) the two perspectives until your understanding clicks in.

Inner planets Explanations for retrograde motion are different for the inner planets (Mercury and Venus are inside Earth's orbit around the Sun) and the outer planets (those outside Earth's orbit around the Sun). Since Mercury and Venus circle the Sun within Earth's orbit, they are always in close proximity to the Sun.

- ✓ Mercury, which orbits the Sun in 88 Earth days, or 3 1/2 times in Earth's calendar year, is never more than 28° from the Sun (less than one full sign). Mercury can only be located in the sign before, the sign of, or the sign after the Sun.

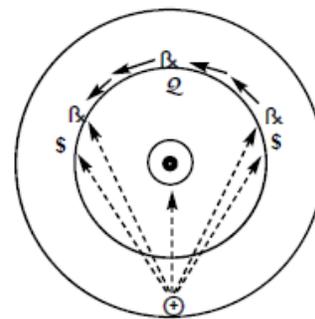
- ✓ The year on Venus is shorter than the year on Earth due to her orbital position closer to the Sun. Venus actually takes about 3/4 of one Earth year to do one full orbit. Venus is never located more than 48° from the Sun (about 1 1/2 signs). Therefore, Venus will always be found in either of two signs before, the sign of, or either of two signs after the Sun.

Earth itself is continuously moving forward in its own orbit. As faster moving bodies, Mercury and Venus draw ahead of us in their smaller orbits. There is a point where they start to go around the Sun on the backside, the side away from Earth. As they reach this point of going around the side, they appear (from Earth's perspective) to be traveling opposite to the direction of Earth, giving the impression they are traveling backwards. This apparent (not real) motion is called retrograde. From our personal perspective, Earth is always traveling in one direction, as are all the system bodies. Occasionally, Venus and Mercury *appear* to be traveling opposite to Earth's motion.

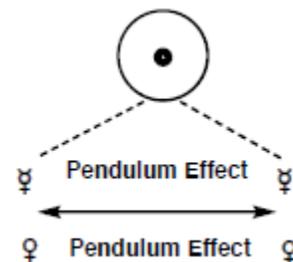
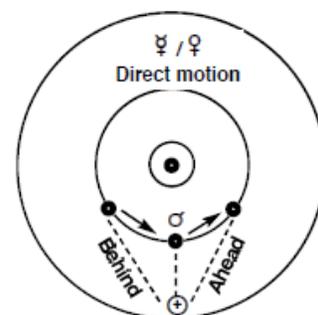
Once Venus and Mercury complete their travel around the back of the Sun and start to move to Earth's side of the Sun, they again seem to slow and stop as they round the corner, and then they resume their normal and direct motion as they catch up with Earth in its orbit. From the helio perspective, Mercury and Venus are, and have always, been traveling direct as they and all the planets invariably do. Interestingly enough, the appearance of the orbit of Mercury and Venus from the perspective of the Earth reminds me of a pendulum swing rather than a full circle.

Astrologers interpret such physical motion as it pertains to human experience. I have only recently seen research and delineation being done for the pendulum swing characteristic between Earth and either Venus or Mercury, and their astrological metaphors on this intensely personal grouping. Why do I say personal?

- ✓ From our perspective on Earth, we look towards the Sun to see Venus and Mercury.
- ✓ The Moon orbits the Earth, so sometimes we see the Moon between Earth and the Sun, similar to Venus and Mercury, all intensely personal energies.
- ✓ At other times, we must turn our back to the Sun (ego) to see the Moon (emotion) and look towards the vastness of outer space (the unknown) and the planets from Mars through Pluto. That view is less personal. Why?



♀ / ♃ S / B motion
(orbit is counter-clockwise)



Two characteristics:

- 1) The inner bodies are in full light or consciousness. At New Moon we cannot see the fully lit surface of the Moon, as that side points towards the Sun and away from Earth.
- 2) The outer planets are in relative darkness (less conscious, or perhaps even unconscious) unless the full light of the Sun illuminates that body which is to our back as we stand with the Sun behind us. Observance of the full light of any body outside Earth's orbit is limited without the direct illumination of the Sun itself. When we turn observation towards outer space, the nature of any outer planet becomes less personal and more cultural or generational with distance of orbit.

How does that translate to the pendulum swing? The center of it all is the Sun (ego). Our communication function and our relating / value system function appear to swing individually from one extreme to the other because the speeds and retrograde / station periods are different. All of this takes place in the full light of the ego / self-identity. This is another project to research. Give some thought to this and pass along any comments you think are valuable.

Outer Planets Have you ever been in a moving vehicle which has been passed by a faster moving vehicle? There is a brief moment, as the faster moving vehicle catches up with your vehicle, when it appears that both vehicles are standing still. You can actually look directly into that other vehicle without the sensation of motion. This moment passes quickly as the faster vehicle pulls away and leaves your vehicle behind. As this occurs, you get a distinct sensation of moving backwards quickly, and that can make you disoriented or dizzy. You and your vehicle are not moving backward. You are continually moving forward at a steady speed. This is an optical illusion, but can produce a very real reaction. Think of this same example using the various planets, their orbits and speeds as vehicles. As the faster moving body passes the slower body, it can appear that the slower body is slowing, stopping, and reversing its direction. Once the faster body is far enough ahead, the slower planet will again appear to slow, stop and then resume its forward motion.

Another example for outer retrograde planets would be that of sitting in a car at a red light. Another car pulls up alongside. If that second car eases forward to any degree, you will have the sensation of rolling backwards and slam on your brakes. I'm sure you've done this before, felt very foolish, and hoped no one noticed. It is really an optical illusion, but it is very real to the one who is experiencing it.

These examples illustrate how retrograde motion occurs, emphasizing that it is apparent and not real, yet is a motion that does have specific impact on the energy represented by that planet.

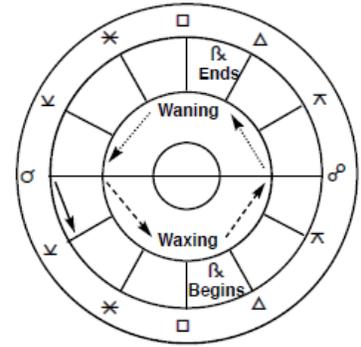
For the outer planets, the point that we use for reference in determining retrograde is that planet's relationship to the Sun. As the planet moves from the conjunction of the Sun and passes the square (90°) point, reaching towards the 180° opposition (waxing), the planet will appear to retrograde at approximately the waxing trine position (120°). Once the planet has passed the opposition and is moving towards the square on its way back to the next conjunction, the planet gives up its retrograde appearance, approximately at the waning trine (120°) position. As the outer planets approach or leave the opposition point (180°), they appear to travel retrograde. Think also of how this may influence your concept of a trine.

Timing and Duration Only the eight planets can go retrograde. The Sun and Moon are always direct, never stationary nor retrograde. Since all planets orbit the Sun, the Sun / Earth relationship is the basis of the measure for retrograde motion. And, since the Moon orbits the Earth, it never has a perspective of retrograde.

- ✓ Mercury goes retrograde three+ times a year,
- ✓ Venus once every 1-1/4 years,
- ✓ Mars once every two years,
- ✓ Jupiter about four months yearly,
- ✓ Saturn about five months yearly, and
- ✓ Uranus, Neptune and Pluto close to six months yearly.
- ✓ Mercury through Uranus can make three contacts during their retrograde dances.
- ✓ Because of their extremely long orbits, Neptune and Pluto are capable of making three to five contacts to any point being activated.

An excellent diagram on retrograde motion is on page 72, figure 44, of John Addey's *Harmonic* book [1]. Also note the retrograde pendulum swing of Mercury and Venus on page 73, figure 45.

Statistics In his study of retrogrades, John McCormick in *The Book of Retrogrades* [2] monitored the period between January 1, 1880 and December 31, 1979 (100 years). His retrograde statistics show: no planets 8%; one planet 19%; two planets 29%; three planets 27%; four planets 13%; five planets 4%; six planets 1%; and seven or eight planets 0%. The true average shows itself to be two or three planets retrograde in any chart.



☉ ☽
never ♁

Seven planets retrograde occurred only two days in that entire 100-year period, toward the end of the 1880s. McCormick did not include the numbers or interpretative factor of stationary planets in his study. From 1880 to 1980, it was common for two (29%) or three (27%) planets to be retrograde at any time during the year due to the long, slow orbits of the outer planets and the fact that Mercury retrogrades three+ times each year. In any chart, two or three planets retrograde appear to be the norm. If there are no planets retrograde or more than three planets retrograde, it places the life experience outside the norm. Zero planets retrograde imply that an individual learns by direct experience, not necessarily taking the lessons from one experience to temper following experiences. One planet, to me, would be a lesser version of zero - perhaps something catches your consciousness, such as, "Oh no, I've done that before!" More than three planets retrograde causes much more subjective energy than is normal, making others feel you are withholding information or keeping something back from them. This results in the native defending, justifying or explaining their actions, and wondering why they must do so. McCormick does give specific readings for unusual groups of planets retrograde in his book. I highly recommend this work for deeper study.

Throughout the 1980s, due to the grouping of planets in the autumn and winter signs, we had a much higher incidence of multiple retrogrades. There were only 52 days of six planets retrograde in the 100 years of the cited study. While studying the subject of retrogradation (and stations), I personally graphed the patterns for 1980-89 to see the significance or differences of those retrogrades.

- ✓ In the spring of 1980, we had six planets retrograde or at station for 41 days, and five planets for many more days.
- ✓ In 1981, we had five planets retrograde from the end of March to the beginning of June (60+ days), but no six or more pattern.
- ✓ In 1982, we experienced five or six retrogrades from about March 10th to June 15th (77 days).
- ✓ In 1983, the five or six retrogrades occurred from the end of March to the beginning of July (ninety+ days).
- ✓ In 1984, we experienced the five, six, and seven patterns from the beginning of April to the 10th of July (100+ days).
- ✓ In 1985, only the five pattern operated.
- ✓ In 1986, the five, six and seven patterns operated intermittently from mid-June to mid-August.
- ✓ In 1987, only the five pattern was in operation.
- ✓ In 1988 the five and six patterns operated between May 21st and July 1st.
- ✓ In 1989 only the five pattern operated.

By comparison with the previous 100 years, this was a usual ten-year set of patterns for mankind to experience and perhaps can account to some degree for the rather zany energies we have had to live through. This is a pattern that immediate past generations of astrologers did not encounter in such magnitude. *Important: this is birth chart information that needed to be interpreted as the children born during the 1980s matured.*

I practice political astrology as well, and noted that, in regard to this area of study, the 1980's were the Reagan economics era. Particularly significant to me is the theme of the "return to the past" mentality that we have experienced since that time, perhaps the effect of so many planets retrograde. In 2016, a new awareness hit me that these kids were 25-35 years old (1980-90 births). They are termed Generation X. That information in itself can affect voting patterns in an unusual way.

How to Read Retrogrades

We have studied the motion in physical reality (heliocentric), and also explored the change in perspective from our earthly home (geocentric). While we accept what is actual, we cannot ignore what is apparent. We must allow for the Earth perspective of retrograde motion in our charting, just as we do so in map-making. Astronomers measure, astrologers interpret. To an astrologer, this natural motion and optical illusion (apparent motion) translates to:

Direct Forward, normal or actual motion, allowing the full energy of a planet to be expressed with nothing held back. The energy would be direct in application, modified by sign, house(s) and aspect(s). Delay of expression would not be encountered unless intercepted or badly aspected. Direct motion is assumed and not specifically marked by a universal symbol for the planet. There are times in research when I choose to mark a planet direct to create a visual memory key. I personally use a D with a slash through it if I have to use a symbol.

∅

Station This is the turning point in the orbit from direct to retrograde, or from retrograde to direct. For a few hours in the case of Mercury or Venus, to a few days in the case of Mars through Pluto, the planet, from Earth's perspective, appears to be standing still with no discernable motion. The planet appears to be waiting for something to occur or is changing its mind. Although largely ignored by most astrologers, this is a very powerful time for the planet. Think of a planet, pulsing its energy into space surrounding it, repeatedly and continually, and without

\$

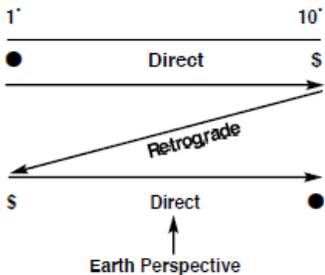
directional motion. That area of space would become extensively radiated, stronger in whatever energy is involved. In reading, note that the planet is probably stronger than usual, and appears to be “changing its mind” or method of expression; the power represented is being “held but not refused”. Note also if the planet has been direct and is moving retrograde, or if it has been retrograde and is moving direct, and apply each meaning to the “change of heart”. There is no universal symbol for the station. I personally use a large “S” with a slash (/) through it, much as our U.S. dollar sign “\$”.

Rx

Retrograde The term means reverse, backward, not usual motion. A planet that has covered several degrees of a sign or signs, which is our method of measure, seems to go back over or recover previously traveled ground. Let us just say that, for whatever reason, a planet has changed its mind and decided to retrace some part of its travel. Once it has finished its intent, it changes its mind again and resumes direct motion and then again covers the same ground. This means that a planet can cover the same degrees several times. Since we have discussed direct and station, we only need to define the retrograde portion of this travel. It is very important to realize there is an entire process going on and that we are attempting to define a tiny part of that process as distinct from the process itself. We are actually taking something out of context, defining it, and then wondering why that definition is somehow lacking or not correctly interpreted.

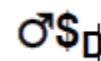
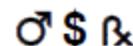
Astrologically, the “re” part of the word retrograde and its keywords are the clue to the definition. “Re” means to do over again. Let us use an example from everyday life. We get ourselves ready to go on a trip (our lives), and while on the way (immediately for natal positions, perhaps five or ten miles out by progression) we realize we left the stove burner (Mars), the electricity (Uranus) or the water (Neptune) on or running. Before we can continue with our trip, we must go back and take care of whatever was left unfinished or not handled properly, and then we can get on with our trip (life). It does change or delay the full expression of the planet’s energies, but does not deny it.

Astrologically, old ground must be recovered. Something is incomplete, unsatisfactory or has been mishandled and must be resolved. If direct energy is forward-seeking or applied, obvious, conscious and projective, then it stands to reason that retrograde energy is back or past-seeking or applied, subtle, sub- or un-conscious and inward-directed or subjective. The energy does not apply itself directly or overtly, but obliquely and / or subjectively. The symbol for retrograde is an “R” with a slash through it, similar to the old Rexall drug sign. For example:



Mars is a planet with a basic straight-forward, assertive definition. Everyone has a Mars, yet everyone does not seem to act (always or even occasionally) in a straight-forward, assertive manner. There are many variables, such as sign, house, and aspect, plus the planet may be intercepted and / or retrograde.

- ✓ A straight-forward, assertive planet (Mars) in a direct motion should act in a straight-forward, assertive, direct and objective manner, unless hampered by sign, house or aspect.
- ✓ A straight-forward, assertive planet (Mars) in a retrograde motion turns the energy back in on itself, directs it inward, making it more subjective and subconsciously directed, and is further defined by sign, house or aspect.
- ✓ A straight-forward, assertive planet (Mars) at station, relatively motionless in space and in life, is changing its mode of operation. Changing its mode from what to what you ask? From direct to retrograde or from retrograde to direct – it does make a difference in the outcome, and is further defined by sign, house or aspect.
- ✓ A straight-forward, assertive planet (Mars) acting directly and objectively (direct) is changing its mind (station) and turning inward, subjective, less outwardly directed (retrograde), and is further defined by sign, house or aspect.
- ✓ A straight-forward, assertive planet (Mars) is changing its mind (station) from an inward, subjective, less outwardly directed (retrograde) mode to its normal objective, outwardly direct mode.



12th house energy The direct motion of any planet is its first house expression, the present moving toward the future. A planet that retrogrades is seeking its 12th house expression or its past. In effect, all retrogrades have a 12th house flavor or represent present energy moving toward the past. More on this subject later in this lesson.

Inner vs Outer planets Personal (inner) planets are more personal, visible and conscious than the outer planets in terms of impact on the life. The outer planets tend to be more social, cultural or generational in impact, more subtle in their personal expression. This is true whether that planet is direct, stationary or retrograde.

Chart Ruler While we are developing the karmic potential of a planet at retrograde, think of the karmic impact on a person's life if the *chart ruler* were retrograde, flavoring *all* of the native's experience.

Refronation Astronomers measure, astrologers interpret. When planets are in the process of forming an aspect (applying) but one or more turns away from the aspect being formed (separating) and therefore does not complete the aspect, this incomplete action is known as refronation. Since all motion, complete or incomplete, real or apparent, is specific to the individual and is not coincidental, this has meaning in terms of interpretation. The aspect is implied but is not fulfilled.

Nodes Heliocentrically, the planets orbit the Sun. The ecliptic is the path of the planets around the Sun, the path on which eclipses occur. Eclipses are a “line of sight” event. If you changed that line of sight measurement, you would change the potential for eclipses. Remember parallax? Add Earth into the equation for our geocentric perspective. Each planet travels its own path, and therefore would have its own ecliptic. The measure we use is Earth’s path. Most paths with the exception of Pluto are relatively close to Earth’s path but from Earth’s perspective they may appear to wander in and out of our ecliptic perspective.

The nodes of a planet are “the points at which the orbit of the planets intersect the ecliptic because of the inclination of their planes to the plane of Earth’s orbit.”[3] Re-read that sentence as necessary. Our Moon’s nodes circling our Earth would be measured similarly, equating the movement of the Moon, Earth and ecliptic. The nodes of any moon would also be determined similarly equating the movement of that moon, the planet around which it circles and its ecliptic.

The lunar nodes, therefore, represent crossing points of Earth’s path around the Sun. You will notice that the word nodes is plural. Like scissors, nodes are a pair of points or an axis. One point occurs as the movement of the body crosses the ecliptic in a south to north trajectory. Its partner occurs at the polarity of that point (opposite by sign) where the body will cross the ecliptic in a north to south trajectory. The title of a node is determined by where the node is headed. South to north in direction (the heading) is called the north node and north to south in direction (the heading) is called the south node.

Planetary nodes are identified by the name of the planet (e.g., Mercury’s nodes north and south). Planetary nodes move quite slowly, are used rarely, and are not a topic for this particular lesson. Their slower motion governs generations of people; this may suggest generational karmic impact. You might add that concept to the Changing of the Ages notes in

the Hierarchical Evolution lesson. At this time, I have not encountered extensive references nor have I researched this. The nodes of Earth's personal Moon are called the lunar nodes. They are used extensively in the astrological community and are the topics of this discussion. Your turn! Want to start a study and report back?

At one time, all nodes were thought to travel only retrograde. The lunar nodes were thought to retrograde at a steady rate of 3' per day. With advancing scientific measurements, it is now known that the lunar nodes travel both retrograde and direct with brief stations, but they do travel in a generally retrograde direction. We now have available both the mean motion (average, 3' per day retrograde) and the true motion of the lunar nodes. While this motion was initially a surprise to the astronomical / astrological communities, the bigger surprise was that the lunar nodes are not exactly opposite. I have been watching, but I am not aware of any ephemeris being available at present on the not-quite-opposite lunar nodes. That is a project for the future. I am unaware of any changes to the reading of planetary nodes at this time, which is a work in process. Stay tuned. As Astronomy learns, so grows Astrology!

The foregoing is a physical explanation (Astronomy). What does it mean (Astrology)? In reading the nodes, which tend to be karmic and / or relational in nature, the inward or subjective tendency of the retrograde is natural. Referring to our previous discussion on karma and its tool or method of experience, reincarnation, the purpose of multiple lives is to give the necessary framework in which to work out multiple lessons. In its simplest form the word reincarnation means: re = again, to go back or repeat; incarnate = to take physical form or specific expression. Reincarnate = to take physical form or specific expression - again.

If we as souls were able to complete all the potential experience in one lifetime, the concept of reincarnation would be unnecessary. Our karma would be initiated, experienced, processed, and concluded within the framework of one lifetime. As overwhelmed as we get in this single lifetime, the concept of only one lifetime in which to experience everything and to learn all the lessons and to balance all the karma is mind-boggling. I believe it is an act of mercy on God's part to let us learn what we must in smaller increments. As we work through the lessons of one

lifetime and either complete what we are able or to recognize futility for the moment, we have a residual karmic balance. This is neither good nor bad as pointed out previously. It just is. During all of our soul's experiences, we have won some and lost some, made progress and lost ground, developed both plus and minus qualities. All karmic residual (and therefore future lessons) represents is the balance of payments or unfinished lessons. The soul selects an experience to work out part of those unfinished lessons or debts or to tackle a new area of growth.

Not all lessons are associated with past behavior. It is entirely possible that, with a cosmos of experience and infinity in which to encounter it, there are bound to be some areas we have not encountered. Therefore, this physical life experience may be based in present to future purposes, and not necessarily associated with the past in a motivational sense. For this particular astrological lesson about karma, since we are dealing with retrogrades which have a built-in bias, we will be looking at the past. It is important to recognize, however, that though this may be true for retrogrades, a working through of past issues may not be the only purpose for reincarnation.

I mentioned earlier in this lesson that the retrograde motion of any planet causes it to assume a 12th house expression or quality. In the natal chart, by commonly accepted definition, the 12th house is considered the house of karma, the past, self-undoing, sorrow, and that which is hidden from our view or which we choose to hide. Please be aware that there is much controversy about those definitions. Astrologers have diverse opinions that you will encounter. This material is my personal opinion.

Perceive the Ascendant as the face you present to the world, the way in which you encounter your immediate environment and its issues. You progress through the houses (experience) in a counter-clockwise direction (widdershins), eventually traveling full circle, and ending in the 12th house as you approach the Ascendant for the new round of experience (which commences at the Ascendant). If the Ascendant is your face and a full circle is traveled (use your hand to describe the circle), then the 12th house would represent the back of your head. That which is directly behind us is not observable to us. As such it could easily be the source of self-undoing, sorrow, that which is hidden from our view or which we choose to hide. In this sense it can represent our subconscious or our unconscious conditioning or motivation.

If the Ascendant represents the present moment moving towards the 2nd house as our potential future, then the moving backwards from the Ascendant (towards the 12th house) must represent that which is immediately past. Remember each moment in time is continually giving

way to the next moment in time. The past, present and future are intertwined and continually changing. It is a human construct to look at time in segments for the purpose of comprehension. With the passage of time, my tomorrow will become my today and then my yesterday.

If one of the purposes of life is to teach us to be co-creators with God or the great creative aspect of the universe, then we must also learn that we are responsible for the effects of our creations. It is easy to create without thought of consequence. It is far more difficult to create when we assume responsibility for our creations and their effects. As causative or creative agents for life, not only must we use our creativity to set things in motion, but we must do so responsibly, owning the end results and their influence on the whole of creation and not just our minute piece of it. This is a pretty tall order, one that could take a while to learn and apply, and with a good chance of error and need for redemption or balance.

If we were to be constantly aware of all that we had been or done to get to this point in our experience, we could be immobilized by the knowledge. The “veil” between spirit and matter is one of ignorance and forgetting. I call it Divine Forgettery. The purpose is to allow us to function without being overwhelmed by our prior actions or experiences. We get glimpses into this past, but it would be wise to rummage around in this karmic closet with discretion and care. Should we fling the door to our past wide open? Would we be able to handle what we find? This closet of ourselves is our 12th house.

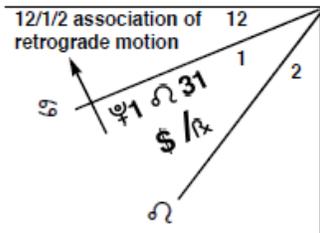
Now that we have established a 12th house meaning, let us briefly look at the 1st and 2nd house expressions of any body. The 1st house is now, immediate influence and intent, visible, observable, and not hidden from view focused into a specific meaning by the Ascendant. The 2nd house is the natural progression from the 1st as physical experience denoted by the houses, run in a counter-clockwise direction. The *now* in its natural movement progresses to the 2nd, which is the now moving towards its future expression, or that which the now is to become through its experiences and lessons. Any planet occupying any house, whether that planet be direct, at station or retrograde, is in its 1st house expression. Since the natural motion of a planet is direct, then the natural inclination of the planet is to move towards its 2nd house expression, or its future. Even though the planet would have a past (its 12th house expression), it clearly moves away from it, turning its back to its history. What is true of the houses can also be inferred in the signs.

When the planet is at station, it is not clearly moving towards its future, nor is it moving clearly towards its past. It is marking time or changing its mind or mode of expression. Perhaps the planet and the energy and lessons it represents are to be used in the now. Or the direction to be assumed by the planet could indicate whether in practice the energy of that planet will be directed towards the past or the future. When the planet is retrograde, it is moving clearly from its now towards its past. Any retrograde planet then denotes a segment of activity that is dependent upon or has its roots in the past, perhaps implying prior life or experience, which may or may not have been physical in nature. We happen to be physical beings. Does that mean there are no other options to experience?

Using the previous material regarding the nature of the planets and their retrograde motion as a base, let us look at the karmic implications. We will use the concept of the past, present, future as indicated by house placement. Wherever a planet is located by house is its first house or *now* experience. Is that planet moving naturally (direct) towards its future expression or 2nd house? Is it at station, changing its mind, pondering, or marking time? Is it retrograde in motion, and looking or moving towards its past or 12th house expression?

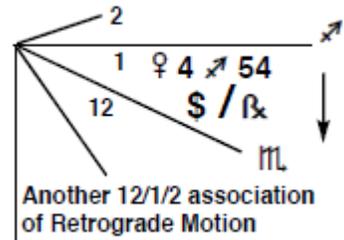
For example, I was born with Pluto at 1 Leo 31 at station turning retrograde in the 2nd house. For Pluto, it's now or 1st house expression is in the natal 2nd house. Its future (2nd house expression), which it is not inclined to visit (turning away from), is in the natal 3rd house. Its past (12th house expression), which it is choosing (station) to revisit (retrograde after birth), is the natal 1st house. In my natal chart, Pluto's past is the 1st, present is in the 2nd, future is in the 3rd. So the focus for the energy represented by Pluto (power used, misused or abused in the past) is from now to the past, and in my natal chart 2nd house, it is moving towards the 1st. In order to have power (Pluto) over resource (natal 2nd), I must master myself (1st). I have unfinished, poorly performed or abused issues of power in my past (prior incarnations or experiences) and must work on them before I am able to progress (direct motion, future orientation and 3rd house focus for me). You would then add the sign expression and aspects to your reading.

What if the planet in its retrograde motion were to change sign as is possible in the case in my natal chart (early Leo could retrograde back into Cancer)? Not only would the focus of material experience (houses) be the past, but so would the method of expression (signs). My Leo Pluto would have to reach back into the sign of Cancer and solve its prior dilemmas (karma) in a Cancer mode in order to make any progress in a Leo mode in



the present. This could indicate a double lesson for Pluto having to master both Cancer and Leo imbalances before it can make now to future progress. This could also further be influenced by the aspects Pluto makes. In my lifetime, Pluto will not resume forward motion by progression, so my lifetime influence will be the original station and always retrograde.

Here's another example, again from my personal chart (handy for examples, isn't it?). I have Venus at station retrograde in the 6th house at 4:54 Sag. Therefore, my 1st house expression (present) of Venus is in the 6th and Sagittarius in nature. My 12th house expression (past) of Venus is in the 5th and Scorpio in nature. My 2nd house expression of Venus (future) is in the 7th house and Capricorn in nature. Station implies marking time, pondering or changing your mind, and is very powerful (flooding a minute arc of space repeatedly with its energy). Venus activities are going to be very important in my life. Venus must review, pay back, balance, finish, relearn (karmic) both Scorpio and 5th house (past) issues as well as Sagittarian and 6th house (present) issues before she can get on to her future as Capricorn and 7th house issues. In reality, Venus did retrograde back into Scorpio by progression, and did station direct at age 42, moving back into Sagittarius as my life progressed. It was a double lesson by sign and by house.



Being born with both Pluto and Venus at station turning retrograde, plus both Saturn and Uranus fully retrograde, makes this area of study very meaningful to me. I pay attention. Saturn and Uranus carry a simple retrograde message. Pluto and Venus carry a more complex retrograde meaning. Not all charts will have such double meanings, but my chart does serve as a useful example for stations, retrogrades and double meanings.

What about refraction as discussed earlier? What if the planet in question leans towards a house or sign but never quite crosses the cusp or forms the aspect? What does that mean in a karmic sense? Perhaps the unfinished business was closer to finishing than was first thought or perhaps only part of the lesson can be worked out in this lifetime. Whoever said it all had to be done right now? Perhaps all that was required on our part was recognition or awareness and not an eye for an eye. Since the purpose of karma is to bring about awareness, do we really have to physically repay every jot and tittle of karmic imbalance? If we are humbled by knowledge of prior misuse of energy or experience, is it necessary to be personally abused and schooled by that energy? Is it possible that the realizations we experience do the actual balancing of our karma?

Planets We can create “recipe card” sentences to give us a head start on learning to read retrogrades. To each of the following planets, add these words: *are overemphasized, apt to take on an unusual twist, have more hang-ups or fixations, are less directly applied, more reflective or absorptive, and more sub- or un-conscious.*



The retrograding Venus traces out an “S” in the sky.

- ✓ Mercury: the thinking process or communications
- ✓ Venus: the relationship urges or attitudes towards money and possessions
- ✓ Mars: the initiating or aggressive urges
- ✓ Jupiter: the business success motivations and philosophical outlook
- ✓ Saturn: the sense of responsibility and feelings of inadequacy
- ✓ Uranus: the need for uniqueness as individuals and independence
- ✓ Neptune: the need to be of service and willingness to sacrifice
- ✓ Pluto: one’s sense of isolation or power urges

Note: The Sun and Moon are never retrograde.

Now that you have a sentence started with the planet and its retrograde status, add the usual readings for signs and houses. If the planet is stationary, add the words to describe the effect of stationary, i.e., *changing your mind, re-focusing*. Be sure to note the effect on the houses by both occupation and rulership. To determine the future course, notice if it’s retrograde already, stationing to retrograde, or stationing to go direct. That information will influence the future course of the planet and its effect on the experience of the individual. If retrograde cleanly, the original sentence we just constructed will suffice. If at station, add the meaning of the station. If retrograde stationing direct, the retrograde (introspective, 12th house) tendency of that planet is in the process of changing its mind and will be refocusing in a direct manner (externalized and normal, 1st house).

Example: Using the recipe card sentence, start with the *planet, keywords as given* in a *sign manner*, and affecting the *affairs of the house(s)* of occupation and rulership. If applicable, add the meaning of the station and note if station retrograde or station direct by using keywords.

Do the opposite with the nodes. Normal motion of the nodes is retrograde. Relating concepts are naturally more comfortable as subjective than objective. Since they represent relating concepts, subjective is normal. They switch direction too quickly to dwell time-wise on the stations, other than mentally knowing they are on a station moment. Nodal station by progression can indicate the change between objective and subjective relating concepts and applications.

Aspects Speaking of aspects, what about a retrograde planet's aspects in a karmic sense? Obviously, soft or hard aspects are going to imply different degrees of learning. A hard aspect is going to imply an uncomfortable lesson. A soft aspect is going to imply an easier form. Retrograde itself implies unfinished but not necessarily abused lessons. Hard aspects can imply a misuse or abuse of the energy, with the attendant hard consequences or an uncomfortable payback in time.

Conjunction This is an aspect that can act soft or hard depending upon the nature of the bodies involved. A malefic will act as a malefic regardless of where or with whom it is found. Similarly, a benefic will perform as a benefic. Benefics soften malefics and malefics harden benefics. Neither a benefic nor a malefic will act in its purest form if affected in this way by conjunction. A conjunction is a synergy, a uniting of energies, innately positive in nature if both benefics, more difficult if malefics or a combination. Look to the nature of each planet to see if the conjunction (uniting) is an easy task, without complication.

Opposition Remember that an opposition is a very visible aspect that usually requires a devil's advocate. Much of this will be worked out through relations with others. Therefore, there is an implication of relationship karma with opposition aspects to a retrograde planet.

Squares are "chips on the shoulder", unconscious hostile or argumentative attitudes or behavior of the individual. To the person having a retrograde planet in square, it may take a lot of work on their part just to make the lesson visible to themselves. Others may see the problem clearly but not be able to (or choose not) to inform the native. If you know you will generate combat, you may not be inclined to point out another's shortcomings, no matter how visible they are to you. Note that the semi- and sesqui-squares are weaker versions the square, but have similar qualities in experience.

Trine or Sextile Soft aspects such as the sextile or trine with a retrograde can give easier methods of working out the unfinished and possibly not abusive lesson represented by the retrograde planet. Perhaps you will aid another in the learning of their lessons. I learned a valuable lesson some years ago when a very wise person suggested that not all the experiences I have are strictly for my personal purposes even though my ego likes to think so. It is possible that we are placed in someone else's path for a time to help them with their lessons. Please do not use this as a cop-out because you do not like the nature of one or more of your own lessons. Do recognize that it is possible that we can be helping another and



learning our own lessons by observation or osmosis, rather than by direct participation.

Inconjunct The quincunx or inconjunct (150° of separation) is considered by some astrologers to be a fated aspect in the sense that it must be worked through and cannot be avoided. Other astrologers view it as an adjustment or compromise aspect. Inasmuch as we are dealing with karmic astrology, and therefore potentially fated patterns, I suggest you combine the meanings - i.e., it is a fated aspect requiring adjustment or compromise relative to the nature of the retrograde planet(s) involved. There is very little material available on the purely karmic nature of inconjuncts or any other aspects. Alan Epstein's book on Inconjuncts [4] is probably the best definitive tool I have ever encountered on the subject of quincunxes. If you are able to find a copy, it belongs in your personal library close to your desk.

After all my studies, it appears that astrologers cannot seem to make up their minds whether a semi-sextile is beneficial or detrimental. While not usually considered so by the mainstream of astrology, semi-sextiles are also inconjuncts. Aspects occur in pairings to form a half circle of 180°, such as two squares, a trine and a sextile, a semi-square and a sesquiquare, and a quincunx and a semi-sextile. The nature of the two parts must be the same. Examine any two adjacent signs. Are they compatible, or are compromise and adjustment necessary?

Applying / Separating / Refraining Particularly note if an aspect is applying or separating or if refraining is occurring. Are both (or more) planets retrograde? In your mind's eye, look at the direction of the planets and think of them as people walking. Are they walking towards each other (both applying)? Are they walking away from each other (both separating)? Is one applying and one separating as they walk? Do they appear to be walking towards each other (applying) but will not truly connect because before they connect, one or both will refrain from the contact and turn away (separation during progression or refraining)? What are the karmic (life lessons) implications?

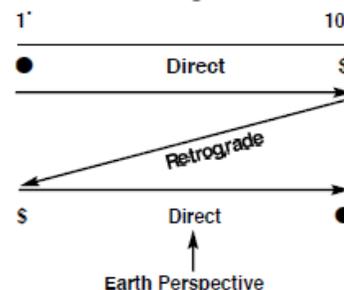
Speaking of moving bodies, what about stations, retrogrades and direct motions beyond the natal chart? The implication of a natal planet retrograde or station is that we brought it with us, and therefore it is an integral part of our character and makeup. If a planet changes direction after birth, are there karmic implications? The concept of retrograde by progression is that of a lesson chosen or developed and not just inherited at birth. Perhaps, during the process of life, we encounter some issues on which we need to do extra work or more practice. It may eventually, by

virtue of the learning process, contribute to the balancing of our karmic pattern, but was not necessarily part of the original lesson (natal promise).

Progression Retrograde planets in the natal chart are an integral part of the character or makeup of the person. When a planet turns retrograde by progression, it becomes a period we have chosen for review, reflection and repeat experience in order to give more depth to our understanding of that energy function. We are re-introduced to past levels or experience. It is a time for in-depth self-analysis, and correlation and review of priorities according to the function of that planet. We can make use of that time period through introspection and preparation for the time when the planet goes direct (or forward) towards new experiences and lessons. We do not stop living the energy of the planet, we just seek to understand it differently. When a planet goes direct by progression, it signifies that the review is complete and it is now possible to travel towards new ground, a turning point in your inner growth. It still has to cover the balance of the degrees, but the direction is now forward.

The slower planets are less apt to change course within the lifetime of the individual and can have effect during the entire life of that person. Even when a planet does go direct, certain residual retrograde influences may affect the planet's more direct expression - like unlearning a habit. True forward expression resumes only after the planet re-crosses the natal degree and minute and / or the degree and minute of its retrograde station point. Some astrologers refer to this stationing degree spread as the "shadow" of the retrograde. The station degree and minute may become sensitive to activation by other planets by progression and transit. Because of the slow motion of the outer planets, many will never pass through the shadow into new territory in this lifetime.

I have noted that the year(s) that any planet stations either retrograde or direct can be a year of great impact on the life of the individual through specific events of the nature of the planet in question. For example, my Mercury (decisions) changed its mind (stationed) and retrograded when I was age 31. Mercury is my chart ruler, so the change was to me and I removed myself from a destructive marriage. Mercury is retrograde for 18-24 days, or by progression for 18-24 years (day for a year.) It is possible for that all to occur within the lifetime of an individual. As I recall that station direct, the last person I had a committed personal relationship with showed back up in my life. I again made the decision (Mercury) to remain removed from that relationship. At that time, I also made a decision that living independently was my best personal choice, and closed the door on the potential of future committed relationships, a major Ascendant / Descendant decision. Note that this was relational (not usually associated



with Mercury), but Mercury is intimately involved in relationships for me as it is one ruler of the Ascendant / Descendant relational axis.

The implication of progressed retrogrades implying conscious decisions in the ongoing life must be weighed against the knowledge and requirements of the Soul at the time it chose incarnation. Does the Soul know only of the pattern existent at the moment of birth? Or is the Soul well aware of the ongoing nature of the experiences (progressions)? Just how much is “chosen” by the individual or “assumed” by the Soul? Since the Soul is a higher dimension of our Selves, does it really matter? It does seem to be true that natal lessons are more important and have more impact as karmic or soul group lessons than that of the progressions.

Remember, if we are Souls and Spirits having a succession of experience (personalities) in order to realign our Selves with our Creator, then the implication is that all experience would be karmic. Due to the nature of “looking back” present in retrogrades, it is a particularly good (but not the only) karmic flag to note in charts.

Two Rodden AA charts with unusual retrogrades are provided. The Rodden database may be accessed at <http://www.astro.com/Astro-databank/>. History of each individual is encyclopedic on the internet.

- ✓ Six planets retrograde: Muhammad Ali
1/17/1942, 6:35 PM CST, Louisville, KY, 38N 15, 85W46
- ✓ Five planets retrograde: Angela Davis
1/26/1944, 12:30 PM CWT, Birmingham, AL, 33N31, 86W48

References:

- ✓ [1] *Harmonics*, John Addey (excellent diagrams)
- ✓ [2] *The Book of Retrogrades*, John McCormick (frequency of patterns)
- ✓ [3] *Encyclopedia of Astrology*, Nicholas DeVore (desktop book)
- ✓ [4] *Inconjuncts*, Alan Epstein (desktop book)
- ✓ *Karmic Astrology: Retrogrades and Reincarnation*, Martin Schulman. An excellent sourcebook with interesting theories on the three-phase process of retrogrades, time sequence of experience, space / time perception, living of memories, 4320 possibilities of expression and comfort, development and use of personal space, thought projection, obsessive or compulsive and repetitive thought patterns (echoes), as well as retrogrades through the signs and houses (with the exception of the outer planets in some signs).

- ✓ *Retrograde Planets and Reincarnation*, Donald H. Yott. Focuses on the misuse or negative aspects of retrograde planets in a karmic sense as past negative character traits carried over into this lifetime. Negative aspects represent misuse or abuse and the lessons are difficult to overcome. Positive aspects represent probation or a second chance to work out patterns less ingrained in the character.
- ✓ *Spiral of Houses and Signs*, Jinni and Joanne. Astrological alphabet.
- ✓ *Dynamics of Aspect Analysis*, Bill Tierney. Excellent reference material. An interesting point is that retrograde occurs when a planet is nearest earth (page 252).
- ✓ *Predictive Astrology*, Frances Sakoian and Louis Acker. Fine detail for planets, signs, houses, occupation, rulership and aspects.
- ✓ *An Astrological Study of Psychological Complexes*, Dane Rudhyar. Always good material from Mr. Rudhyar.

Muhammad Ali

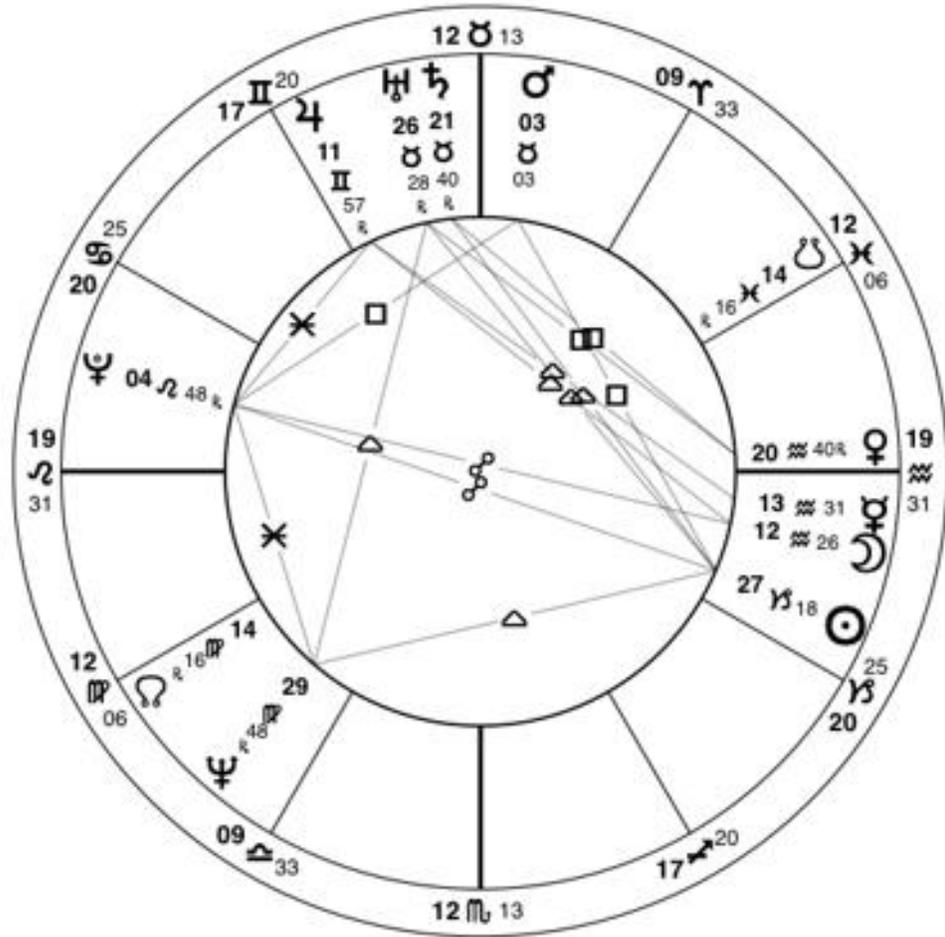
Natal Chart

Saturday, January 17, 1942

6:35:00 PM CST

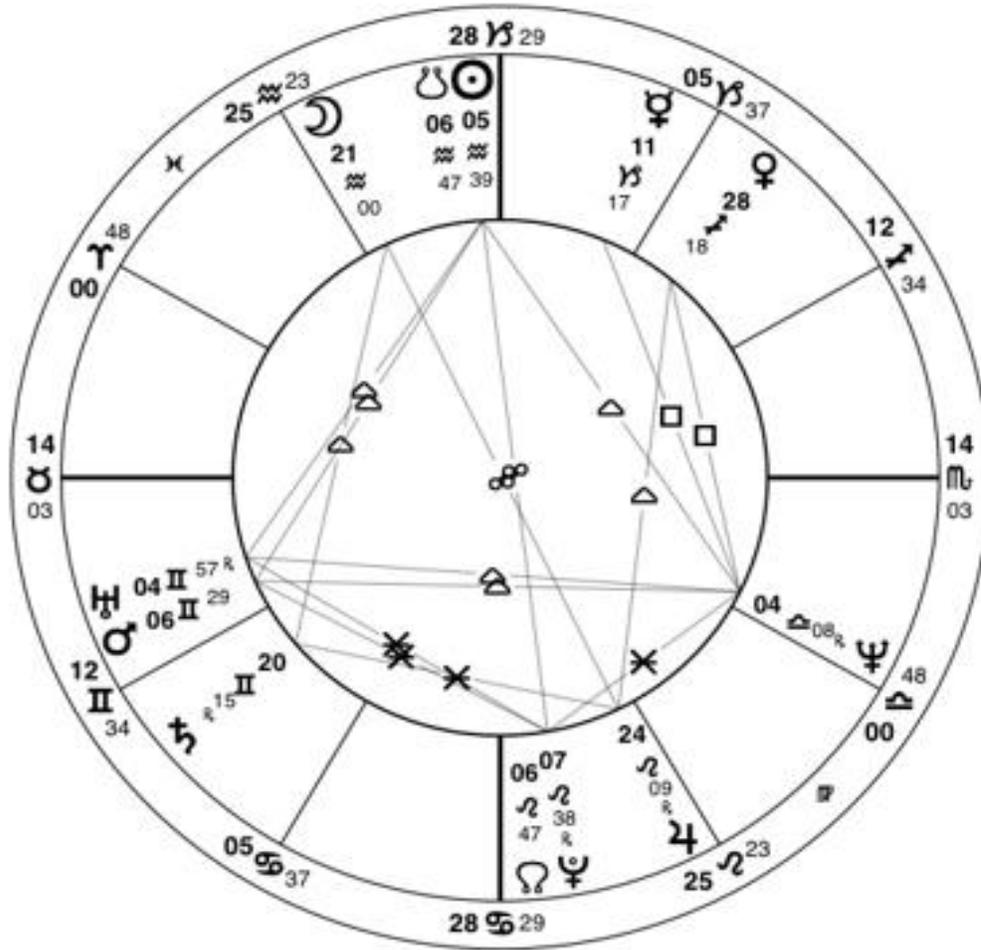
Louisville, Kentucky

Tropical Placidus True Node



Angela Davis natal

Natal Chart
Wednesday, January 26, 1944
12:30:00 PM CWT
Birmingham, Alabama
Tropical Placidus True Node



Vertical line on the left side of the page.

The Nodal Axis and Karma

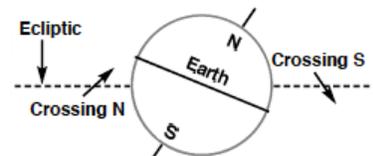
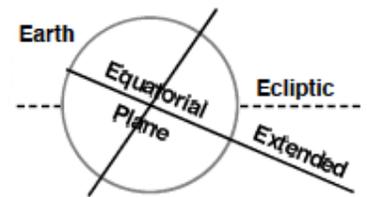
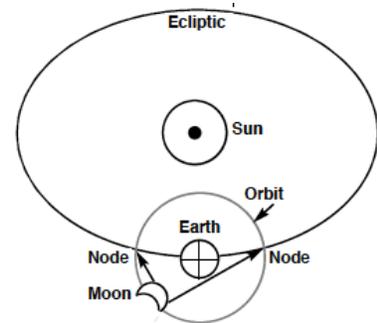
*Nodes of the Moon and Planets, Geo- and Helio-centrally
 Meaning of Nodes by Sign, House and Aspect
 Synastry, Progressions
 The Nodal Barrier*

Lesson 6 has introductory information about the Nodes in relationship to retrograde motion. Before we get into the meaning of the nodes and their application from natal and karmic perspectives, let us briefly review what they are and how they are determined and measured. It is so much easier to delineate a concept when you have a mental picture of how it acts physically.

Definition DeVore’s *Encyclopedia* defines the Nodes as “the point at which the orbit of a body (Moon or planet) intersects the ecliptic, the apparent path of the Earth around the Sun, the path on which eclipses occur, because of the body’s inclination of its plane to the plane of the Earth’s orbit”. This is where a planet will cross the extended plane of another. Moving “up” towards the northern hemisphere of the earth or “above” in direction would be the north node of such body. Moving “down” towards the southern hemisphere of the Earth or “below” in direction would be the south node of that body.

Nodes of the Moon Until fairly recently, the nodes of the Moon were the only nodes commonly considered. The nodes of the Moon are used regularly in chart work and are given daily in most ephemerides. In eighteen years, on ten or eleven days (depending on our use of leap year), the node regresses 349° producing an eclipse or series of eclipses similar to the previous eighteen-year period. This is called a Saros cycle. The movement of a full cycle of the Moon’s nodes takes approximately 18 1/2 years.

Traditionally, the lunar nodes were considered to be in exact opposition and consistently retrograde 3’ per day. In the ephemeris, the north node was listed with the south node assumed to be the opposition point by sign, degree and minute. These assumptions have recently been challenged.



With the advent of computers and more sophisticated technical methods of research and calculation, our access, measurement and understanding of the nodes has increased tremendously. We are now aware that the nodes travel retrograde and direct on a regular basis at varying speeds. Our base of information about the lunar nodes is constantly shifting, so research potential is excellent. This means that as future ephemerides become available, we will have to alter our use or application of the Moon's nodes. As Astronomy grows, so grows Astrology.

Some ephemerides still list the mean motion of the recession (retrograde) at a constant 3' per day. Increasingly, the true node is being listed. You can make a note of which type of node is in use in a chart. I leave the mean (traditional) node unmarked and put a "T" in front of the nodal symbol for the true node as my notation. This is not a universal symbol marker. Remember, mean motion retrograde was considered to be the only motion possible until computers showed our error. All previous research was done on a mean node basis. Now that we have become aware that the node travels both direct and retrograde, should our interpretation shift? Which method is correct – mean or true? Is there room or purpose for both? Until adequate research and validation through practice determines the answers, the issue will continue to cause controversy amongst astrologers.

I quite successfully used the mean node for many years. I have used both the mean and the true node in my practice and research, and have seen value for both. I personally prefer accuracy over average motion at this point in my studies – this could always change with proof to the contrary.

What about the fairly recent information that the south node is "not always" directly opposite the north node? That was a bombshell! To my knowledge, ephemerides are not available at this time, but should become available in the future – prompting a new round of research and application. This could mean that the north and south nodes can be read and triggered independently. That may be an explanation for an aspect where the activation timing was off. Food for future thought.

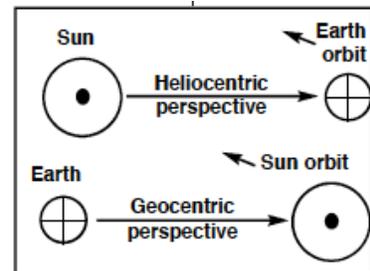
Planetary Nodes (Heliocentric)

This section was originally researched prior to the advent of nodal positions being available on computer charting. I have included it here because it is a simple explanation of the history of the use of planetary nodes, information on which had been quite limited. A rigid table of heliocentric nodal positions was all that was available until recently. The heliocentric nodes of the planets move not more than 1 1/2 degrees in 100 years. Heliocentrically, the planetary south node was not necessarily opposite its north node. DeVore's *Encyclopedia of Astrology* gives a technical table for the various categories of the planetary nodes. I.G. Jacobson's *Here and There in Astrology* gives the following table on heliocentric planetary nodes (note seconds of motion):

Jacobson's Heliocentric Annual Motion

Planet	North Node	Motion	Tendency	Vibration
Moon	Ephemeris	-18 1/4°	Instinct	Emotion
Mercury	18 Taurus	+43"	Literary	Mental
Venus	16 Gemini	+32"	Artistic	Social
Mars	19 Taurus	+28"	Mechanic	Physical
Jupiter	10 Cancer	+36"	Academic	Education
Saturn	23 Cancer	+31"	Vocation	Ambition
Uranus	14 Gemini	+18"	Inventive	Science
Neptune	11 Leo	+40"	Idealism	Spiritual
Pluto	20 Cancer	+49"	Isolating	Compulsive

The Node Book by Zipporah Dobyns gives far more research and application, as well as an excellent ephemeris, and is suggested reading. Both the traditional heliocentric and the newly available, and quite different, geocentric nodes are listed. Geocentrically, there is a substantial movement in the planetary nodes of the inner planets through Mars, decidedly less with Jupiter and Saturn, and very little motion with the three outer planets. Also in the Dobyns ephemeris, the geocentric planetary north and south nodes are listed separately, as they are not always directly opposed but are in fact capable of many aspects. In order to do adequate research on the geocentric planetary nodes, you will need the Dobyns book.



The helio- / geo-centric change in perspective is best described by parallax which we covered in the retrogrades lesson. Since the Sun and Earth are the basis for the orbital path upon which the intersection is determined, neither have nodes. If we were on Mars trying to determine nodal intersection points, the orbital path would be Mars / Sun relational. Neither Mars nor the Sun would have nodes, but instead the Earth would have them.

Quoting from World Sidereal Research Foundation Newsletter #8, September, 1984 (I believe out-of-print) by John van Zandt, "First of all they [the planetary north nodes] are not consistently opposite their own [south] nodal positions geocentrically. In some instances, the north planetary node and the south planetary node can be in semi-sextile, trine or square aspect. Secondly there is no agreement as to how they should be interpreted. My feeling is that they should not be exactly like the planet of the same name, but should indicate our link with a particular facet of the planet. If our natal Mercury were conjunct the Venus north node, I would suspect an interest in poetry, creative writing or singing..."

In an old article by Charles E Luntz, he refers to the controversy among astrologers as to the lunar nodes stating that W. H. Chaney (1890) denounced their use as myths and time-wasters. Sepharial and Luntz both felt the lunar nodes to be significant and valid, but used only the conjunction aspect to either node.

In general, the north node of the Moon or a planet is considered advantageous. DeVore gives it the nature of Venus / Jupiter, bringing honor and riches. The south node of any body is considered destructive, giving it the nature of Mars / Saturn, bringing poverty, affliction, cruelty or baseness. Hindu astrology has a contrary view of the lunar nodes Rahu (north) and Ketu (south). Jacobson and DeVore give technical information only. More research and application suggestions are given in Dobyns' book. Since most of the available written material covers only the lunar nodes, the following synopsis applies specifically to the lunar nodes and only in a general way to the planetary nodes.

There are several authors who I particularly like and have incorporated their material into my own readings. These are the points (paraphrased) that I found applicable.

Karmic Astrology Volume 1: The Moon's Nodes and Reincarnation by Martin Schulman considers the nodes as “points of soul magnetism, one pulling towards the future [north] and one coming from the past [south].” The south node is more of the comfortable, familiar habit pattern previously built through countless lifetimes. We can become entrapped by our foregoing accumulated karmic patterns or can use these past, firm or solid foundations to reach forward into our future (north). This south node is potentially our weakest spot, our karmic residue. This can be a “fatal fascination of the past”, a reliving or rehashing of what went before – or a glimpse of the past to help us define the future (north), and we allow ourselves to become entrapped by our unconscious memories. The south node is another time zone, a memory bank of what has been and can be the “shackles of a karmic prison”, the culmination of many lifetimes.

The north node is the symbol for the future: new, never before experienced; unknown yet alluring; the new sense of direction, the new problem never before confronted. As you overcome each obstacle to the north nodal growth, which obstacles particularly stem from the south node, you find a “treasure-filled cornucopia”. These are the “tests of courage” you must overcome alone – at the very core of your being. The north node represents the “highest area of expression to be reached in the current life”. This is Man’s discontent with the old, joined with his desire for the discovery and exploration of the new. No matter how far you go, there is always more, with each step bringing you more inner satisfaction.

“Man cannot achieve his north node” until he “learns to give up, gracefully, the negative patterns or habits” of his south node and be willing to travel a new, untried path. He must strive to overcome the negative south node implications, especially if a planet ruling a node is in mutual reception with the opposing node. The past and present are unavoidably linked, and demand that the lessons of the past be remembered (not relived) in order to fulfill the future. Rather than re-experience the south node, we must use it as a springboard to the north node.

As I re-read my teaching notes to which I have added my personal reading experience, I see that so much of my understanding and application of the nodes is because of the writings of Mr. Schulman. Namaste and thank you.

Reinhold Ebertin in his *Combination of Stellar Influences* uses only the north node in delineation and does not use houses. His principle for the north node is association and alliance. Psychologically, this indicates adaptability or the urge to unite with others, sociability, good fellowship and an obliging manner – or the inability to do or be these things.

Sociologically, it governs meetings, alliances, societies, contact men, blood ties (kindred or relatives), Also according to Ebertin, biologically the north node governs the astral (power) body, the subconscious memory and hereditary factors. This more clinical approach is valuable.

According to Myrna Loftus (*A Spiritual Approach to Astrology*), house reading is primary. The south node represents the area of potential personal growth, repeatedly used in the past to the point that some traits which have become too imbedded need to be revamped. The north node represents the area of potential spiritual growth. Neglected in the past, important in the present, and if not confronted and mastered, repeated in the next lifetime. The north node is sowing, the hand reaching out to grasp. It can atrophy if not used. The south node is reaping, the cupped hand which positively offers its gifts openly, or negatively expects to be filled by life. The signs tell you the qualities previously developed negatively with the south nodal position and those qualities that should be developed positively with the north nodal position.

With such valuable study material available on the planetary nodes, the most important consideration is not to treat the node as if it were the planet itself. The node is a dimension of the planet, a harmonic, an extension, a resonance. When it is touching another planet or point in a chart or when it is touched by a moving planet or point in the progressing chart, it brings an added dimension into the picture. That added dimension will be of the nature of the node's own planet (refer to the Mercury / Venus example in the Van Zandt quote).

The late Buz Myers, my personal astrologer, teacher and friend, suggested that the north node is a new language to be learned, a new focus. The south node is stuck in the past and therefore pertains to unfocusing. He felt that the nodes act as an extension of the planet and wondered if the north node represented one side of the brain and the south represented the other.

Here are some additional lunar node notes directly from WSRF Newsletter #8 by John Van Zandt: “[Using] another frame of reference may be helpful. Musically, it would be analogous to an overtone or harmonic resulting from the combination of two separate tones. It is a resonance (or echo) created by the crossing of the two paths. In this regard, the nodes symbolize a blending of the Sun (objective purpose or self) and the Moon (subjective purpose or self). The north node is thought to represent that point which indicates the objective purpose manifesting through the subjective self and the south node is thought to represent the subjective self manifesting through the objective purpose. The south node shows the possibility of how the self can undermine or undo the purpose by selfish motives, cravings and desires. The north node shows how the purpose can

access cravings, emotions and desires to evolve towards empathy, caring, understanding and humaneness. The difference is personal motive and choice; to allow the subjective self to manifest the objective purpose and not get in the way of the challenge. There is always the possibility of undoing due to selfishness. Since these points are always opposite one another, they indicate the dual nature of our motivations, emotions and desires and how those things can be used as enhancements or detriments in growth.” *[It is important to note that this article was written well prior to the astronomical discovery that the lunar nodes are not always opposite.]*

My research indicates that, regardless of the node, lunar or planetary, there seems to be a karmic implication. It is impossible to view the south node as a point representing ingrained traits developed previous to the moment of birth without somehow implying continuity of experience. Since karma is essentially cause and effect, the south node suggests repeated causes from our past with an habitual response (effect) in this lifetime. It is our constant goal to make choice conscious and not perform unconscious, knee-jerk or habitual reactions. The north node represents the drive towards consciousness, the path of the future, our progressive self. This is not an easy task, for it is far easier to repeat our knowns (south node) than to risk our unknowns (north node). Through our north node, we build our knowledge, sowing new, hopefully positive karmic seeds.

In the case of the lunar nodes, the effect is intensely personal and has been researched and used by astrologers over the centuries. In the case of the planetary nodes, the heliocentric effects are more evolutionary and generational in nature as they move so slowly and can influence certain degrees for long periods. Geocentrically, the nodes of Mercury, Venus and Mars have considerable motion and are, therefore, more personalized. Geocentric nodes of Jupiter through Pluto are very limited in motion and remain close to their helio positions. They, too, will tend to operate more in a nature that is evolutionary or generational. As mentioned, you will need the Dobyns book to determine your personal geocentric planetary nodes unless your computer program provides them.

Lunar Node Delineation The house of each node shows the mundane matters and experiences affected by that node and the sign shows the qualities of character affected. I personally read the south node as indicating where you must let go of old habits and the north node as to where you must face the new wind, gather up your courage and go forward.

I read both nodes as relational, both personal and collective, but with an emphasis on relational *concepts* rather than one-to-one relationships. The nodes seem to show how we view relating in general, but such attitudes can easily apply to individual and / or personal contexts. As a collective relationship concept, this suggests (positively) special interest groups, common causes, collective bargaining, and (negatively) racism, bigotry, etc. Many times, the nodal effect is through group efforts or results.

When triggered by transits, progressions or directions, the implied experience is karmic in nature and is tied either to the past as cause and effect (south) or as the progressive, learning, new road to be followed (north). Therefore, understanding the natal role of the nodes becomes useful when they are triggered.

In addition, the nodes have a definite role in important terminations, transitions, deaths of all kinds, and finality. All deaths are not physical. We can experience the death of a job, a relationship, a home, a phase in life, a nation, and so forth. In my experience through thousands of personal, client and research charts, activations to the nodes are present in these important events, either by the node itself progressed or directed or by the natal node triggered by a progressed, directed or transiting activation, which includes eclipses. Lots and lots and lots of karma.

Signs Every front has a back, and every sign has positive and negative traits in relatively equal amounts. The qualities which express positively can be turned inside out or backwards to show their negative expressions. Think of flipping a coin, with one face on one side and a different graphic on the reverse side. Think of the negative traits which can be developed by a sign and use them for the south node where habit and familiarity draw us. Think of the sign's positive traits that should be developed by the north node. Additionally, think of the south node sign's positive traits that can be accessed in this lifetime to assist in the development of the north node sign.

Aries north node, Libra south node

Past (south) development of dependency in relationships, peace at any price behavior, vacillation or indecisiveness must give way to the development of (north – Aries) personal self-confidence, assertion, initiative and courage. Positive Libra traits of conciliation, fairness in judgment and relating skills can become positive assets for the Aries development.

Taurus north node, Scorpio south node

Past (south) habits of possessiveness, obsession, control issues, suspicion and misuse of sexuality must give way to the development of (north – Taurus) a personal value system, correct use of desire, integrity, stability, and durability. Positive Scorpio traits of depth, intensity, and psychological perception can become assets for the Taurus development.

Gemini north node, Sagittarius south node

Past (south) Sagittarius habits of license (freedom without responsibility), lack of commitment, crude or excessive behavior, and dare-deviltry must give way to the development of (north – Gemini) communication, information gathering, and logical thought and decisions. Positive Sagittarius traits of risk-taking, world-view, philosophy and projected thought can become assets for Gemini development.

Cancer north node, Capricorn south node

Past (south) Capricorn habits of status-seeking, unemotional or insensitive behavior or attitudes, and caste-system judgementality must give way to the development of (north – Cancer) emotional security, family, nurture, and sensitivity. Positive Capricorn traits of responsibility, achievement, dignity, honor and prestige can become assets for the Cancer development.

Leo north node, Aquarius south node

Past (south) Aquarian habits of detachment, aloof or impersonal behavior, and excessive objectivity must give way to the development of (north – Leo) creativity, drama, personal goals and personal strength. Positive Aquarius traits of friendship, group dynamics, and insight can become assets for the Leo development.

Virgo north node, Pisces south node

Past (south) Pisces habits of confusion, lack of confidence, martyrdom, escapism, or super-sensitivity must give way to the development of (north – Virgo) discernment, discrimination, positive and sensible service, and a strong work ethic. Positive Piscean traits of imagination, empathy, and the ability of gestalt experience can become assets for the Virgo development.

Libra north node, Aries south node

Past (south) Aries habits of aggression, selfishness, bullying, leaping before looking, and me-first must give way to the development of (north – Libra) diplomacy, relating skills, cooperation, and fairness. Positive Aries traits of self-confidence, assertion, and individuality can become assets for Libra development.

Scorpio north node, Taurus south node

Past (south) traits of excessive material security or possessions, stubbornness, or gluttony first must give way to the development of (north – Scorpio) self-discipline, depth of perception, joint venturing, and ecological awareness. Positive Taurus traits of stability, durability, and practicality can become assets for Scorpio development.

Sagittarius north node, Gemini south node

Past (south) traits of superficiality, triviality, butterfly-like lack of commitment, and flip-flopping decisions must give way to the development of (north – Sagittarius) philosophy, detente, spiritual seeking, and distribution of knowledge. Positive Gemini traits of information gathering, friendliness, and sociability can become assets for Sagittarius development.

Capricorn north node, Cancer south node

Past (south) traits of over-sensitivity, emotional immaturity, dependency and negative memory must give way to the development of (north – Capricorn) emotional maturity, reputation, achievement, and status. Positive Cancer traits of nurturing, sense of family, emotional sensitivity and personal security can become assets for Capricorn development.

Aquarius north node, Leo south node

Past (south) traits of I / me / my, overbearing pride, self-dramatization, and self-fulfillment must give way to the development of (north – Aquarius) individuality in the service of humanity, objectivity, knowledge, and evolution. Positive Leo traits of creativity, drama, paternal protection and loyalty can become assets for Aquarius development.

Pisces north node, Virgo south node

Past (south) traits of criticizing, self-flagellation, hypochondria, and nitpicking must give way to the development of (north – Pisces) universal consciousness, faith, compassion, empathy and Divine Love. Positive Virgo traits of discernment, service, practicality, hygiene and health can become assets for Pisces development.

Houses Adding to the sign message, the houses are arenas of experience in which a node participates or is conditioned. Houses are the *where* of experience and an occupant tends to act personally. While the signs can affect groups or generations of people, with groupings dependent upon a 1.5-year duration in any sign, the houses are approximate two-hour segments of daily time, and that tends to make occupancy more personal. For example, planet Pluto in Leo affected twenty years of people. Pluto in the 2nd is shorter-term (around two hours), and is therefore more personal.

Quadrature The left side of the chart tends toward experiences that emphasize the development of self. The right side of the chart tends toward experiences that involve the needs of others. The top half of the chart is daylight and promotes objective experience. The bottom half of the chart is nighttime and promotes subjective experience.

North Node in the...

House	Quadrature	Experience (to learn)
1 st	bottom / left subjective self	challenge to the self, what are you made of? self-reliance, obstacles are tests for growth
2 nd	bottom / left subjective self	develop value systems which contribute to the meaning of the life, talents, resources
3 rd	bottom / left subjective self	communication skills, education, everyday associations and study
4 th	bottom / right subjective / other	foundation for emotional security and maturity, family, parental, home
5 th	bottom / right subjective / other	power to create children of the mind and the body, speculation, circle love (uncommitted)
6 th	bottom / right subjective / other	for what you have received, learn to give, service, work, health
7 th	top / right objective / other	cooperation, partnership (business or personal), commitment to relationship
8 th	top / right objective / other	joint ventures and financial endeavors, life and death, effective desire nature, extremes

9 th	top / right objective / other	expansion in education, travel, culture, philosophy, legalities
10 th	top / left* objective / self	external security, professionalism, stature, career achievement
11 th	top / left objective / self	value of groups, associations, friendships, career fulfillment (2 nd of 10 th)
12 th	top / left objective / self	inwardly seek the universal, meditation, self- validation, awareness of cosmic connection

*Advancement, promotion, applause and fame, and all that creates success come from the north node being in the 10th or 10 to 12° into the 9th house side of the 10th house, or the node having favorable aspects to the Midheaven (Schulman). Failure, remorse, dishonor or disgrace come from the south node in the same position.

South Node in the...

House	Quadrature	Memories and habits complicate...
1 st	bottom / left subjective / self	individuality, self-reliance, independence, self first
2 nd	bottom / left subjective / self	possessions, financial security, rigid personal values
3 rd	bottom / left subjective / self	outmoded communications, focus on concrete thought, difficulties in education
4 th	bottom / right subjective / other	family or home issues or webs, demands with resentment**
5 th	bottom / right subjective / other	creativity of mind and body, wildly speculative, uncommitted relationships
6 th	bottom / right subjective / other	illness or debilitation, servitude, work- related problems
7 th	top / right objective / other	poor committed relationships, business or personal, open enemies, team work difficult

8 th	top / right objective / other	misuse of joint resources and projects, debtor consciousness, sexual problems, jealousy
9 th	top / right objective / other	freedom and expansion overworked, short circuits higher education and philosophy
10 th	top / left** objective / self	parental problems, difficulty in career, recognition and stature
11 th	top / left objective / self	unrealistic dreams, difficulties with friends, groups and associations
12 th	top / left objective / self	unremembered or irrational fears, sympathy creates victimization not of this world

** According to Delphine Jay, with the north node in the 4th, the native has to achieve family unity with very little help from family members. After reading thousands of clients' charts, I find this concept to be true, or even if not factually true, the person feels that it is. Please be aware that it does not matter if the issue is true if the person believes it to be; this is a quirk of victimization.

* and ** This is my ongoing examination only. It is my belief that if a theory is valid natively, it should also be valid in other applications. If there is not a natal promise of success or failure, is it possible that such effect can occur by progression or direction? You also might watch for temporary effects by the transiting nodes.

- ✓ Natal would be considered strongest,
- ✓ followed by progressions (developmental),
- ✓ and directions (more event-oriented),
- ✓ with transit activations weaker due to a lack of duration.

Aspecting

Astrological exams ask that you use specific degrees for all major aspects (including those to the nodes) for the purpose of consistency, even though most testing agencies indicate they are not advocating the use of such orbs. I use much tighter nodal orbs of two or three degrees, not ever over 5° natively, even when stretching a point. An aspect to one lunar node

automatically aspects the other in similar fashion: conjunction / opposition, square / square, sextile / trine). Supposedly, there are no weak aspects, although I believe hard aspects are very visible, and the soft aspects tend to be taken for granted and at times not utilized to their fullest potential.

Aspects by planets to the lunar nodes Over the years, I have applied many methods from multiple authors in an attempt to create a working model for nodal delineation. At this point, these are my conclusions and they seem to be heavily influenced by Schulman's work.

Conjunct south node This is another chance to learn the karmic lessons implied by the south node by redoing those lessons. The planet adds its energies to the lesson. Be careful not to focus on the south node, neglecting the new direction required by the north node.

Conjunct north node You are urged to leave the past behind. When younger, you tend to misuse the north node, probably through not understanding. We always need to focus on where we are going, not where we have been. If we do not, karma will lead us back to this nodal position.

Conjunct both nodes The soul is confronted with resolution of very powerful conflicts which must be resolved this lifetime through the nature of an opposition. Focus energies on the most benefic planet or the positive aspects of the north nodal planet. I personally have one of these, and it has gotten me in real trouble over the years!

Square both nodes Squares can be internal conflicts or personal chips on your shoulder. Be careful you don't follow them or allow them to trip you up. This can be particularly difficult if the planet doing the squaring is the Moon (again my personal aspect). The squaring planet can expend much energy on the dilemma, possibly losing sight of the purpose.

Trine south node (sextile north) Positive aspects suggest the planet offers opportunity to use your past (symbolized by the south node) to improve the usefulness of the south node lessons. A soft aspect can be lazy or easily ignored. Be careful to avoid the easy way out. Use these positive aspects to your north node benefit.

Trine north node (sextile south) Promise of harmonious opportunities makes the north node experience easier to reach, with help from the aspecting planet and with cooperation of the south node.

Applying and separating aspect criteria also pertain to nodal aspects, particularly important with matching conjunctions / oppositions. Any aspect can apply, approach, refrain, or separate, and in any order. Aspects that appear to be separating can change their mind and over time re-approach. Look back to the retrograde lesson to understand the motion. Have a friend walk through the various possibilities with you. I call that “show and tell”.

Planetary Node Aspects In terms of aspecting and orb of the planetary nodes, planets which are conjunct within 1° applying or separating are said to combine the influence of the planetary node with the vibration of the aspected planet. I have seen little else on aspecting planetary nodes with the exception of the opposition and the square, which were used by Buz Myers.

Progressions and Directions

Normally progressed and directed motion is applied to natal placements. Progressions are real motion, directions are not, but both seem to work. The natal positions are permanent in effect but can be triggered by other moving bodies. Remember the nodes are points only, intersection points in space occupied by no object. As such, I see them as *receivers* of activations. Do not bother to read direct to direct as the arbitrary motion merely repeats the natal aspects. Progressed to progressed can time the year any aspect becomes perfected, and that may be significant.

If you read the progressed chart as stand-alone, the progressed nodes by house, sign and aspect serve as temporary indicators of nodal activity. Natal placements are permanent. Any moving planet or point indicates something temporary in nature. Interceptions can appear or disappear. Retrograding nodes can change to direct and back again, indicating periods of relating subjectively and objectively.

Death Research indicates that when a planet directs or progresses to the same degree as the nodes, some form of death can be experienced. This can be physical death of self, others, pets, or perhaps estate activity. This can also be a psychological death such as the finality or letting go associated with a house move (death of home), a divorce (death of

relationship), or a devastating job change (death of job). Watch for other confirming death aspects in a chart (not necessarily the death of the native). Progressed nodal contacts always produce strong results, not usually sudden in effect, and perhaps lasting for several years, such as caretaking a person who undergoes a lingering death. This is not the only scenario.

Synastry In synastry, nodal ties imply karmic associations, tied present to past if south nodal and present to future if north nodal. South nodal ties can either offer support or entrap you in familiar habits and responses. If you encounter these contacts, try to stay focused in your north node and its path, rather than drop back into pre-programmed responses from the past at the south node. If the contact from another chart is to the north node in your chart, the other person should be supportive of the intent of the north node. Mode does depend on which planet or point is doing the aspecting. Venus acts quite differently from Saturn. Aspects formed imply ease or difficulty of the relationship itself. Additionally, the planets involved can suggest the nature of the past life tie (i.e., Venus – lover, Mars – antagonist or brother, Mercury – student, Jupiter – teacher, etc.).

As you can see from the detail in this lesson, the Lunar Nodes are steeped in Karmic overtones.

Nodal Barrier

In an article not thoughtfully clipped from an old astrological magazine (possibly “*Horoscope*”, though my clipped page gives no information), Astrologer Connie Cummings raised an interesting theory as to the existence of what she called the nodal barrier. In order to know if the theory holds up, you would need to research it through many charts, and that is something I have not done. Her single example of Benito Mussolini was quite good. Because of the tremendous karmic implications in a pattern such as this, I wish to make you aware of the possibility of such a barrier, even though I personally have not undertaken the research. (*Cummings material has been paraphrased or “excerpted”.*)

The natural nodal barrier is formed when all ten bodies are contained in a bowl or bundle chart pattern within the opposition of the lunar nodes (not the planetary nodes which may or may not be opposite). New research shows the lunar nodes are truly opposite some, but not all of the time, which was not known at time of the time of this writing about the nodal barrier. Since such an ephemeris is not yet available and the lunar nodes are opposite much of the time, this barrier may still work on the charts produced during the opposition.

Ms. Cummings suggests an imprisoning or entrapping effect by the nodal axis “symbolic of repression, frustration and introversion of the functions they represent” [which would be all functions within the individual since all ten bodies are entrapped] “with great difficulty in expressing one’s self to others”. A form of isolation is implied such as:

- ✓ Mannerisms: cold, distant, self-centered, extremely intense, sets self apart from the crowd, with an air of superiority, refuses to be taken for granted, unusual, perhaps neurotic shyness, lack of self-confidence.

The application or direction of the imprisoned energy seems to occur through the nature of the hemisphere occupied.

- ✓ Lower (houses 1 – 6): shyness, introversion, private, loner, recluse, extreme introspection, insightful, artistic.
- ✓ Upper (houses 7-12): externally active, extreme ambition, seeks status and position, ruthless calculating, egotist, self-centered, equating personal identification with public recognition, “psychologically trapped by obsession to get ahead at all costs”.
- ✓ East (houses 10-3): strongly individualistic, uncompromising, ruthless dictator, neurotic desire for independence – a rebel without a cause, won’t or can’t take order, problems with personal relationships and job superiors.
- ✓ West (houses 4-9): Inability to make decisions, lack of individuality, the ultimate follower, easily dominated or influenced by others, resentful yet not assertive, fear of rejection.

Quadrature It is possible to have the nodal barrier operate in two hemispheres simultaneously. How? A tight, bundled chart falling in the distorted unequal house system caused by high northern or southern latitude births. This could cause a double barrier, suggesting great conflict between the hemispheric influence involved and extremism as a reaction. This combination of hemispheres is referred to as quadratures. Mussolini was upper (dominant) and western (dependent). Ms. Cummings feels that “Mussolini saw life as a situation in which you either dominate, or be dominated”. One of the two hemispheres that define the quadrature will be dominant, complicated and primed (like a pump) by the other.

Occasionally, Miss Cummings felt you could encounter nodal barrier charts where nine planets are contained and a singleton is outside (more of a locomotive or bucket pattern). This would not fit the description of the barrier, but let us examine the possibility anyway. The bulk of the planets contained within the nodal barrier still suggests isolation, but with a natural release point (possibly with karmic overtones). This can be a sense of destiny by house and sign position of the singleton (outlet).

If a clustering of planets takes place near either Node, that node will be the focus in terms of interest, activity or outlet, according to the nature of the sign and house. If the south node, a life or a sense of sacrifice. If the north node, it can lead to greatness when expressed positively.

In synastry, a full barrier person can be drawn to a partial barrier person through a sense of sympathy or mutual interest. Such singleton becomes the mechanism of release for both charts. [Because I believe we are drawn together for common lessons, I would think important relationships could draw together partners who could both have some form of nodal barriers. *Example from my earlier lesson:* A client from years ago had a Moon / Pluto conjunction. Her first and second husbands had Moon / Pluto conjunctions. Her two children had Moon / Pluto conjunctions. Her brother-in-law from her second marriage had a Moon / Pluto conjunction. His wife had a Moon / Pluto conjunction. Why do you think these people were drawn together? By the commonality of the aspect - and I am very grateful this was not my lesson!]

Benito Mussolini's chart was provided in Lesson 5. Please note Miss Cummings used 1:08 pm LMT. My IO computer program has his chart set for 2:00 pm LMT. Having looked at his history, my initial preference would be 1:08. This is a questionable chart that needs to be rectified by events.

The major sources of nodal information I have used are:

- ✓ I.G. Jacobson, *Foundations of the Astrological Chart*
- ✓ Zipporah Dobyns, *The Node Book*
- ✓ Reinhold Ebertin, *The Combination of Stellar Influences*
- ✓ Nicholas DeVore, *Encyclopedia of Astrology*
- ✓ Martin Schulman, *Karmic Astrology – The Nodes*
- ✓ Myrna Lofthus, *A Spiritual Approach to Astrology*
- ✓ Connie Cummings, "Do you have a Nodal Barrier in your Chart?"
- ✓ Tapes and class notes from a Buz Myers lecture on planetary nodes
- ✓ Miscellaneous notes collected over many years study and research

Karma and the Vertex

*What is the Vertex? How does it work in a chart?
How do you apply and read it?
Karma, Fate, Destiny*

The major angles considered in any chart are usually the Ascendant / Descendant (an axis) and the Midheaven / 4th cusp IC (another axis). Late in the 20th century, the Vertex / Anti-Vertex axis was suggested to be as valid a horoscope angle as the aforementioned axes. Before attempting to apply the Vertex karmically, we should explore the basics of the Vertex concept.

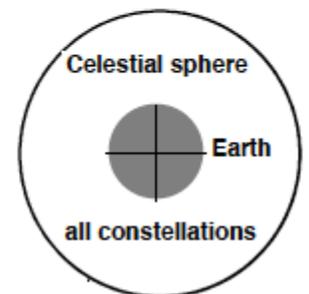
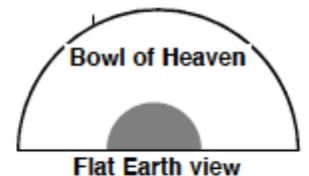
Definitions

- ✓ Vertex:(Webster) Vertere, the top or turning point, apex, top, summit
(Astronomy) the Zenith
(Geometry) point of intersection of two lines of a figure, opposite the base and exact center farthest from it.
- ✓ MC (Medium Coeli) Midheaven (top of heavens), the 10th house cusp
- ✓ IC (Imum Coeli) bottom of heavens, 4th house cusp
- ✓ Asc (Ascendant) the rising sign, 1st house cusp
- ✓ Dec (Descendant) the setting sign, 7th house cusp

Technical

Ancient Greek astrologers believed that the flat Earth was overshadowed by a large inverted bowl on which the stars and planets were “painted” or fixed. Some astrological systems were Earth-centered. Other astrological systems, such as Sumerian cosmology, reflected a Sun-centered system. The method that we use currently, both sidereal and tropical, is Sun-centered.

For convenience, modern astronomers and astrologers perform their calculations and delineations on a circular model that is based geocentrically. Earth is in the center of a “celestial sphere”. Constellations range all over the surface of this celestial sphere, around eighty in number,



depending on which star catalog is used. Twelve of those constellations are the basis for astrology, the zodiac, which straddle the ecliptic, Earth's path around the Sun. I do not subscribe to the thirteenth sign material that keeps being peddled.

Great Circles

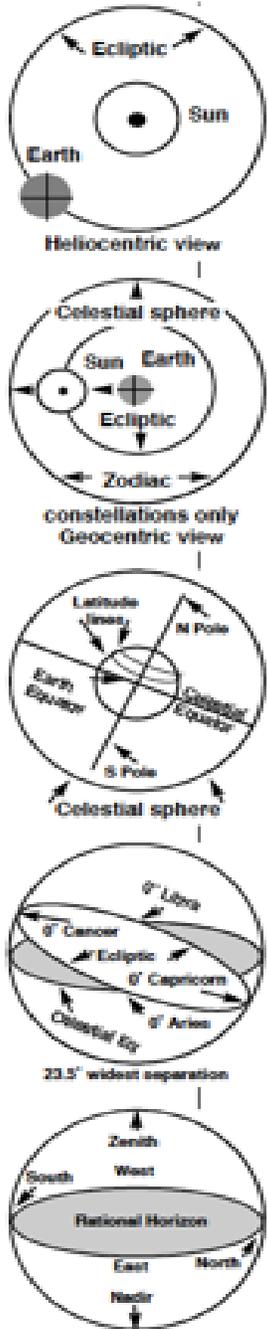
For the moment, think of our solar system as the center of a huge ball on which all the stars, galaxies and universes are affixed – the celestial sphere. The largest circle possible to cut through the center of the body being measured is called a great circle. Circles that do not go through the center of a body are referred to as small circles. The ecliptic is a great circle that passes through the center of our Sun. Although we know our Earth and the rest of the planets orbit the Sun (heliocentric view), it appears from our earthly perspective (geocentric), that the Sun and planets orbit the Earth, an optical illusion.

This apparent path of the Sun / Earth relationship, the path of the Earth around the Sun, is called the ecliptic, the path on which eclipses occur. The ecliptic passes through the twelve zodiac constellations. Therefore, it is a great circle measured by zodiacal sign and degree.

A familiar circle located on Earth is the equator. It passes around the middle of the Earth equidistant to the geographic north and south poles. Degrees of terrestrial latitude (small circles) are measured from the equator (0°) to the north pole (90°N) and south pole (90°S). Extending this circular equator off into space until it touches the celestial sphere creates the celestial equator, another great circle. Since the Earth is tipped on its axis about 23 1/2°, the celestial equator and the ecliptic (zodiac) meet at only two points: 00° Aries and 00° Libra (equinoxes) and veer widely apart, 23 1/2° at two points: 00° Cancer and 00° Capricorn (solstices).

The visible horizon is found where we can see the ground and the sky meet. If we create a circle that passes through the center of the Earth parallel to the visible horizon, connecting the four compass points (N, S, E, W), that great circle is called the *rational horizon*.

The poles of the 90° angle of the rational horizon are called Zenith (located directly over the head of an observer) and nadir (directly beneath that observer). Zenith and Nadir are not to be confused with the Midheaven (MC / 10th cusp) and Imum Coeli (IC / 4th cusp). The great circle that passes through the Zenith and Nadir, plus the east and west points of the rational horizon, is called the *prime vertical*.

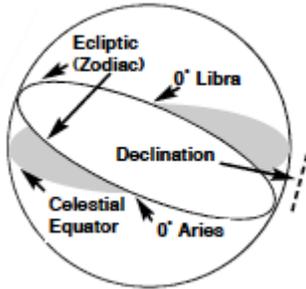


The great circle that passes through Earth's north and south poles and the Zenith and Nadir of the rational horizon is called the *prime meridian* from which time zones are calculated. One side of the earth is the Greenwich 0° time meridian and its opposite point on the other side of the planet is the International Date Line.

Note: There is another unnamed and unused great circle that passes through the north and south poles of the Earth and the east and west points of the rational horizon. As an astrologer, know that we have this information for future research.

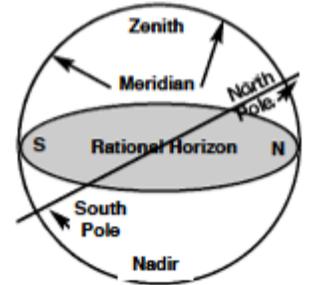
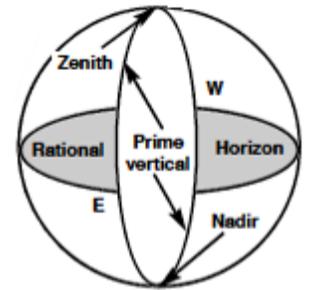
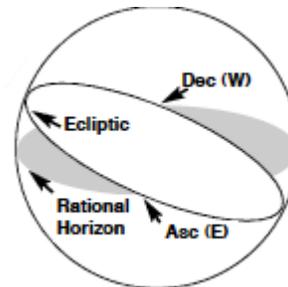
Chart Points

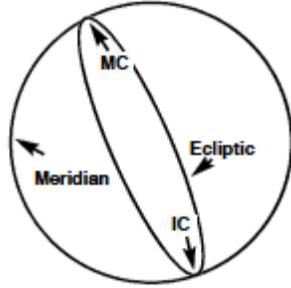
Astrological chart points are determined by the intersection of the ecliptic with another of the great circles:



Right Ascension (RA) and Declination (Decl) from the ecliptic and the celestial equator.

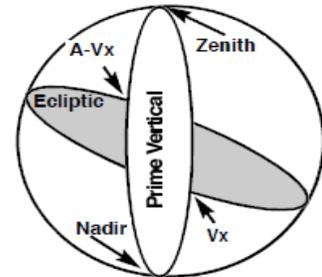
The Ascendant (Asc) / Descendent (Dec) axis from the ecliptic and the rational horizon.





The Midheaven (MC) / Imum Coeli (IC) axis from the ecliptic and the meridian.

The Vertex (Vx) / Anti-Vertex (A-Vx) from the ecliptic and the prime vertical.



This is a great deal of technical information to digest. I suggest you pause at this moment and spend a few moments studying the diagrams. Once the concept has clicked into place in your mind, you may move on. This is background and proof of validity and accuracy, but not usually used in a reading.

Calculation

(Degrees have been rounded off for simplicity)

North latitudes of birth: Use the 4th cusp (IC) and the birth latitude from the natal chart.

- 1) Subtract the birth latitude from 90° to obtain the co-latitude.
- 2) From your table of houses, using your IC as a MC and your co-latitude as a birth latitude, determine the ascendant in the normal manner, the Vertex position.

Example #1: North Latitudes of birth, equator to north pole:

90° =	89° 60'	Natal IC:	2 VIR 49
Birth Latitude	-43N02 (43N)	at Co-Latitude	47N
Co-Latitude	46N58 (47N)	Vertex =	18 SCO

South Latitudes of birth:

- 1) Subtract twelve hours from the birth chart sidereal time. In your table of houses, look up the resulting chart sidereal time at the co-latitude for the chart as described in Example #1 above.
- 2) The listed ascendant figure is the Vertex position in degrees and minutes; however, you must use the *polarity* (opposite) of the zodiac sign as given in the table for all charts south of the equator.

Example #2: South latitudes of birth, equator to south pole:

Birth chart sidereal time:	22:19:07	MC at new CST:	3 VIR
minus 12 hours	<u>-12:00:00</u>	at co-latitude:	47S
new chart sidereal time:	10:19:07	Asc at co-latitude:	18 SCO
Retain ° and ', use sign polarity:		Vertex	18 Taurus

In both instances, the Anti-Vertex is the point opposite the Vertex.

Note: While examples have been rounded off for simplicity, be accurate when you determine the Vertex for a natal chart. Use double interpolation for accuracy. Obviously, a computer can do all this for you if your program provides it.

Placement in the chart Place the Vertex and Anti-vertex in the same manner as you would place any planet in the chart. The Anti-Vertex is located in the same degree and minute as the Vertex, but in the opposite sign and house (its polarity). In most charts, the Vertex will be located in the 5th to 8th houses, and less frequently in the 4th and 9th houses because charts cast for the U.S. will have northern latitudes. If you cast charts for equatorial and southern latitudes, the Vertex may be found on the eastern side of the chart, houses 10 - 12 and 1 - 3. This is not an error, but eastern placement is encountered less frequently in the U.S.

How does the Vertex work in a chart?

- ✓ I was introduced to the Vertex through a workshop by Master Astrologer Delphine Jay of Orlando, Florida.
- ✓ I encountered additional relationship Vertex research for 300 charts done by Astrologer Kim Donnell of Miami, Florida.
- ✓ My personal friend and astrological mentor, Michael Munkasey, has done extensive research on the Vertex and other lesser-known points in a huge book called *Star Fields*.

- ✓ *The East Point and the Anti-Vertex* by Maritha Pottenger, published by ACS Publications, has excellent information, and her diagrams are better and more technically correct than my personal attempts.

The following quotes define the Vertex and give you an idea of how it applies natively and karmically:

- ✓ Charles Jayne: "...an angle of fate involving other people."
- ✓ Kim Donnell: "Spirit...fated experience, expectations lifetime to lifetime... not always comfortable in experience... seeming to come from outside the self... significant... [reciprocal]."
- ✓ Zipporah Dobyns: "fateful or unavoidable encounters," an auxiliary Descendant with the Anti-Vertex as an auxiliary Ascendant.
- ✓ Jan Popelka: "critical, fateful or karmic events as related to the law of cause and effect... a chain of actions that lead to eventual results, unless modified. The Anti-Vertex represents the personal desires and actions of the wish factor, the cause... with the Vertex as the wish fulfillment, the effect... be careful of what you wish for."
- ✓ Mike Munkasey: "a point of entanglement with others... becoming involved in circumstances not directly your physical doing... situations which you yourself have put in motion, but over which you have no direct control... a wish fulfillment factor with no concept of time... the Anti-Vertex is the point where we freely take advantage of others or may use them for our own purposes."

I also encountered great Vertex material on the internet by Astrologer Lynn Koiner. She teaches workshops around the country, but particularly in the Washington, D.C. area.

In my own research and subsequent application in chart readings, I have found most of the above to be valid, which is why I chose to quote those authors. To me, the Vertex seems to be:

- ✓ the collective or social self, the part not under your conscious control because it is reactive;
- ✓ whose activations seem to always involve others and circumstances which are not directly your physical doing, but which you somehow set in motion;
- ✓ the signifier of critical, fateful or karmic events, acting like a chain reaction and result from the actions you have taken, with the Anti-vertex as the cause, eventually leading to an activation of the Vertex as the effect or manifesting result.

I also see the Vertex as a point of environmental expectancy involving the needs of others. Activation of the Vertex indicates a time, the people and / or the circumstance:

- ✓ where you must return or pay back what you have freely taken from the environment;
- ✓ where you must experience the results of what you yourself have set in motion, whether or not you remember (your inner wish factor has no concept of time), and whether or not you want to own the experience.

Successful Vertex activations complete a cycle of growth and stimulate future cycles of growth. If you do not complete the cycle by fulfilling the demands of the Vertex, you leave yourself at the mercy of the environment and the “others” who complete the cycle for you.

Emphasis on the involvement with others creates noticeable synastry contacts, with potential of fated or karmic encounters or experiences.

What is the Anti-Vertex? The Anti-Vertex is usually, but not always, located in the eastern half (houses 10 - 3) in western charts. The eastern (rising) side of a chart exercises more volition and control. The western (setting) side of a chart involves you with others, providing less volition and control. The Anti-Vertex represents where we have the conscious volition and control necessary to fulfill our conscious wishes and desires, and is the easier road to follow. This can be your cop-out position when the Vertex is activated. It is far easier to react by playing victim, to deny, or to reject or project your responsibilities outwardly than it is to own your involvement and to be responsible for and participate in its resolution, completing an experience positively. In brief:

- ✓ The Anti-vertex is a volitional, personal point under our control.
- ✓ The Vertex is an impersonal, collective point, not usually under our personal control.
- ✓ The Anti-vertex conditioning and abilities oppose what the Vertex demands and creating inner conflict.

If we have tunnel vision, it is difficult to accept that we create our own inner conflict through our personal actions and wishes at the Anti-Vertex, and possibly experience eventual self-punishment experiences at the Vertex. This inner conflict / self-punishment theme may be viewed through the interactions of the Vertex / Anti-Vertex by sign, house and

aspect. Remember Munkasey's concept that the Anti-Vertex is the point where we freely take advantage of others or circumstances or may use them for our own purposes - and then try to convince me that you are the victim when the Vertex is activated. It's like the old saying, "What goes around, comes around."

How to Read

How do we apply the Vertex / Anti-Vertex in the chart? In my astrological practice and lessons, I use an analogy for determining emphasis, priority and usefulness of planets, signs, houses, aspects and activations. I learned this method from *A Cosmic Science* by Isabel Hickey.

- ✓ *What* Planets are activating principles, psychological urges or needs of the individual, and the energy itself. As rulers of signs and houses, they act as the control functions in the chart.
- ✓ *How* Signs act as lenses modifying our perception of the energy being expressed by the planets. Any planet "appears" to exhibit differing "behaviors" as a result of being filtered through a sign. The sign "describes" mannerisms or the visible mode to the planet. The sign is not the energy, but merely describes how the energy is acting.
- ✓ *Where* Houses are physical pockets of expression, departments of life, arenas for the activities generated by the planets. Houses divide or compartmentalize our physical experience. The house is the setting. What part of your earthly life is being affected?
- ✓ *Why* Aspects are the angular relationships between the various elements of your chart, the connecting links, signifying whether the relationships established by the aspects are favorable or detrimental. Ambivalence may occur from a lack of aspects.
- ✓ *When* The natal chart provides a diagram of zodiac degrees sensitive to the native. Activations by transit, progression or direction trigger or catalyze the natal sensitivities, and we encounter the experiences promised in their many forms.

What One more time, planets are activating principles, psychological urges or needs of the individual, and the energy itself. As rulers of signs and houses, they act as the control functions in the chart. Basic positive keywords for planets are as follows:

- ✓ *Sun*: self-identity, ego, integration factor, individualizing
- ✓ *Moon*: emotion, memory, familial, nurturing, mothering
- ✓ *Mercury*: concrete thought, message, communication
- ✓ *Venus*: relating urges, desire nature, values, possessions
- ✓ *Mars*: assertion, drive, warrior, aptitude
- ✓ *Jupiter*: expansion, philosophy, persuasion, education
- ✓ *Saturn*: contraction, structure, responsibility, judgement
- ✓ *Uranus*: innovative, inventive, forward-seeking, independent
- ✓ *Neptune*: inspirational, psychic, spiritual, artistic
- ✓ *Pluto*: psychological, extreme, unconscious, compulsive

While the Vertex is not technically a planet, it is a point to be considered, much as the angles and the nodes. Technically, a planet can both give and receive energy because it has an actual location in space and is a physical body. A point is an intersection in space, with no physical body present. Planets both give and receive; points receive only. With this in mind, we will look to aspects “triggering” the vertex, more of a one-way street rather than the usual give and take of planets. If we were to note the Vertex move by progression, direction or transit and encounter an activation, my word would be “now” for whatever the Vertex defined.

Consider the Vertex and the Anti-vertex as you would any position – as a psychological principle or issue that has exercised its unique volition to set a pattern in motion at the Anti-Vertex and then to reap the results, perhaps unwelcomed, at the Vertex; whose messages may be described by the sign placements; expressing through life departments by house; and modified, reshaped and experienced in the manner of its aspects.

Begin with the Anti-Vertex, since this is the cause position. Deliberately choose the most negative expression of each sign to help you understand what is unnecessary! The Anti-Vertex can also be a source of great strength and inner character, but you already have enough of what the sign indicates. Karmically, the point of the Anti-Vertex indicates a basic identity, action, drive and ambition, familiar and habitual, where we may have:

set in motion an inner conflict, an inner wish function,
 with no sense of time, of which we may have no memory,
 freely taken from others and our environment,
 taken advantage of others or used others for our own purposes,
 where we may cop-out on the growth demands of the Vertex.

How Signs act as modifying lenses to our perception of the energy being expressed by the planets or points. Any planet or point “appears” to exhibit differing “behaviors” as a result of being filtered through a sign. The sign “describes” mannerisms or the visible mode of that planet or point. The sign is not the energy, but merely describes how the energy is acting. What mannerisms do you have or use in abundance? Here are some sign keywords:

- ✓ *Aries*: initiative, assertion, aggression, stand up for yourself, go it alone, challenge life, I-me-my
- ✓ *Taurus*: materiality, sensuality, stick-to-it-iveness, stubbornness, greed, unyielding, stuck
- ✓ *Gemini*: intellectual, data-gathering, superficial, dilettante, jack-of-all-trades, two-faced
- ✓ *Cancer*: emotional / moody, mothering / smothering, nurturing / emotional control
- ✓ *Leo*: dictatorial, dramatic, dominant, lordly, pompous, condescending, boisterous, I-me-ego
- ✓ *Virgo*: service / servant, analytical / nit-picking, critiquing / criticizing, self-deprecating
- ✓ *Libra*: compromise, neutrality, fence-sitting, indecision, relationship-dependent, mediocrity
- ✓ *Scorpio*: guilt / manipulation, obsession / compulsion, unforgiving / retaliatory
- ✓ *Sagittarius*: philosophical cliché, con-man, rolling stone, glib, unsettled, tactless
- ✓ *Capricorn*: social or stature climbing, success at any price, restrictive / judgmental
- ✓ *Aquarius*: objectivity / detachment, aloof /distant, rebel / revolutionary, opinionated / hard-headed
- ✓ *Pisces*: sympathy / empathy, victimization / escapism, delusion, flighty, unstable

Now to the Vertex, the effect position of what we instituted at the Anti-vertex, consciously or unconsciously, at some undetermined time. The Vertex is a point of fruition, perhaps the wish coming true,

even if, over time, you have forgotten what you wished for,

or perhaps were not specific about the form of your wish,

and now you do not recognize it as wish fulfillment,

payback (you freely took from someone or something),
 balance of karma, relationships, etc.,
 completion of cycle, finalizing, releasing, distribution,
 clearing the deck for new cycles set in motion by closure of this
 cycle,
 seeds new beginnings, and the resultant growth,
 and over which you may feel a complete lack of control.

Overabundance or negativity associated with the Anti-Vertex can determine the qualities needed to be developed or earned at the Vertex. I have broken down the Vertex information for this section by the inner wish, potential environmental demand and possible growth path. I have used only a few keywords and categories and hope to stimulate your own thought processes. Obviously, each sign represents far more than these three principles or categories. Spend time with basic sign principles to develop more concepts, categories and keywords. These examples are meant to stimulate, not limit, your grasp of the Vertex theory. Validate your theories with lots of examples.

<i>Sign</i>	<i>Inner Wish: to be</i>	<i>Environmental Demand</i>	<i>Growth Path</i>
<i>Aries</i>	true self, confident	courage, pioneering	self-aware, I Am-ness
<i>Taurus</i>	materially secure, stable	tenacity, practicality	develop value system
<i>Gemini</i>	heard, understood	information, dexterity	knowledge from info
<i>Cancer</i>	share emotion, safe	nurturing, patriotic	emotional maturity
<i>Leo</i>	creative, acknowledged	commanding, drama	godhood w/ humility
<i>Virgo</i>	coherent, respected	responsible, useful	service with joy
<i>Libra</i>	relating, conciliatory	partnership, diplomat	relationship, We-ness
<i>Scorpio</i>	renewed, transformed	researcher, healer	unveiling, release
<i>Sagittarius</i>	truth-finder, free	promoter, arbitrator	path finder / teacher
<i>Capricorn</i>	successful, recognized	organization, tradition	personal achievement
<i>Aquarius</i>	unique, futuristic	invention, politician	individual w/in group
<i>Pisces</i>	emphathetic, visionary	inspirer, imagination	creativity / spirituality

What happens if you cop out on the Vertex activation,

and follow the path of the Anti-Vertex,

deny, refuse or project your responsibility,

continue the imbalance,

negate the closure, release and distribution of the experience,

deny completion of the cycle,

subsequently short-circuiting your new cycle which was to begin,

falling short of your potential and obligations,

stunting your own growth,

forcing the environment to call on another person to do your
Vertex duty,

and leaving you at that person's mercy (that is, if they have any).

To ignore or deny the demands of the Vertex can cause a deepening of a difficult complex. The Vertex can be the point of denial, refusal and projection, and would be the point where psychological and, at times, physiological damage could be done. What we do not handle well can become the source of illness or disease. Again, by sign, damage to or a debilitating complex of:

- ✓ *Aries*: self-image, self-projection, coping skills, inferiority
- ✓ *Taurus*: self-sustaining, personal values, financial well being
- ✓ *Gemini*: thought, opinion, communication, sibling relationships
- ✓ *Cancer*: emotional security, family, physical home, parental
- ✓ *Leo*: self-identity, ego, superiority, creativity, children, ability to give and receive love
- ✓ *Virgo*: hypochondria to real illness, nonproductivity, victimization (real or imagined)
- ✓ *Libra*: indecisiveness, retention of damaging relationships, denial of own needs
- ✓ *Scorpio*: psychological nightmare, self-destructive, vengeful, sexual excess
- ✓ *Sagittarius*: truth mechanism, restlessness, ability to settle and find meaning in life

- ✓ *Capricorn*: vocational / organizational skills, self-discipline, reputation, parental
- ✓ *Aquarius*: group involvement / acceptance, objectivity / detachment mechanism
- ✓ *Pisces*: illusion / delusion, escapism, space cadet, victimization

If you project your Vertex demands, and another person or group must act out what you refuse to own, that “other” will either perform to the extreme of whatever demonstration is required, or exact due payment. Look to the negative expectation of the unfulfilled Vertex by using the negative keywords of the overdone Anti-vertex. Are you starting to see the karmic implications of this activation point?

Just don't forget that you may have developed many good qualities or characteristics during your Anti-Vertex development state. Feel free to use those good qualities to assist you in developing your Vertex in this lifetime. In other words, don't repeat the difficult or overloaded qualities of the Anti-Vertex, but do use the positive qualities to assist the development of this lifetime's Vertex.

Karma, Fate, Destiny Now to the subject of this lesson's application: karma, fate, and destiny. You will notice through the reading part of this subject that karma is a major player in cause-and-effect material. Karma, fate, and destiny are an integral part of the Anti-Vertex / Vertex cause and effect, the simplest definition of karma. Such implications can come through as:

unavoidable circumstance;

seemingly fated meetings;

relationship entanglements (family, lovers, vocational, social, etc.);

environmental experience (earthquakes, accidents, political unrest, violence);

perhaps through previous use or misuse of people, relationships or your environment (be careful what you wish for because dreams do come true);

projection, denial, refusal to own or participate in your responsibilities;

“Do not unto others that which you would not have them do unto you”;

given control to another or the environment by refusal to perform at the Vertex activation:

that can lead to illness, disease, or even death if left unresolved.

Houses are Where Houses are physical pockets of expression, departments of life, and arenas for the activities generated by the planets. Houses divide or compartmentalize our physical experience. The house is the setting. What part of your earthly life is being affected?

Again, in general, remember that planets or the Vertex / Anti-Vertex in the eastern hemisphere (which contains houses 10 through 3) are volitional in nature and more under the control of the individual. The western hemisphere contains houses 4 through 9, and they are less under the control of the individual because they involve others, their needs, demands and actions. Normally, but not always, the Anti-Vertex is in the eastern hemisphere and the Vertex is in the western hemisphere. When they switch hemispheres, the reading of the Vertex and Anti-Vertex will have to be reshaped due to the apparent contradiction and resulting paradox. I have encountered only one of these charts and, therefore, do not have the experience to form an opinion. Please seek other information sources, probably Mike Munkasey’s or Maritha Pottenger’s work. The Vertex / Anti-Vertex is easily read through house axis positions:

- ✓ *1 / 7 axis* relational (self / other, me / you, accept / project)
- ✓ *2 / 8 axis* resource, assets or talents (mine / yours / ours / theirs)
- ✓ *3 / 9 axis* thought and opinion (mine / yours / ours / theirs)
- ✓ *4 / 10 axis* internal / external security (family / vocational)
- ✓ *5 / 11 axis* creative, love given / received (socially responsive)
- ✓ *6 / 12 axis* service, physical / psychological wellness / illness

Zipporah Dobyns and authors Jinni and Joanne refer to the astrological alphabet, joining similarity (not exactitude) of meaning between a planet and the sign(s) and house(s) it rules. So we can always go back to the sign information we have already developed and use that information by correlating signs to houses. For example, sign 1, Aries information can be translated to apply to house 1 and their joint ruler, Mars. Sign 2, Taurus

information can be translated to apply to house 2 and their joint ruler, Venus, etc. *Example:* Anti-vertex in the 11th house and Vertex in the 5th house: the experience would be similar to the Anti-Vertex in Aquarius and the Vertex in Leo. Just remember the sign is “how” and the house is “where”.

Aspecting

The planets are sign and house rulers, but the above will also be true of conjunctions between the planets and the Vertex or Anti-Vertex.

Why Aspects are angular relationships between the various elements of your chart, the connecting links, signifying whether the relationships established by the aspects are favorable, detrimental or ambivalent. There is little available documented Vertex aspect research. Aspects to the Vertex axis from natal planets need to be determined carefully.

The Vertex is a point, not a planet. It is capable of being acted upon. The Vertex is a moving point calculated individually for each chart, so retrograde is not a factor. The Vertex may be intercepted, with the usual definition - influence delayed but not denied.

Orbs should be very tight. As mentioned, the Vertex and Anti-vertex are points in space; no physical body occupies their locations. Contact within 3° will tend to be more critical, visible and direct in effect. Contact beyond 3° will tend to be less critical, less visible and more indirect in effect. Since the Vertex / Anti-Vertex are exactly 180° apart, what is conjunct one will be opposite the other; what is square one is square both; and what is trine one is sextile the other.

Conjunctions and oppositions are the easiest to read. Apply the astrological alphabet theory, using the meanings of signs, houses and planets to support and reinforce each other. If the Vertex is conjunct the following planet or point, the planet expects a specific expression by the Vertex. Use both old and new rulerships - the jury is still out. The Sun, Moon and outer planets rule one house and sign each.

- ✓ *Sun:* admirable and independent behavior, energetic dynamic action (alphabet Leo / 5th house)
- ✓ *Moon:* warmth, nurturing, receptivity, feelings, parental influence (alphabet Moon / 4th house)

- ✓ *Mercury*: communication, clarity, intelligent activity, data gathering (alphabet Gemini / 3rd house); or analysis (alphabet Virgo / 6th house)
- ✓ *Venus*: romance, appreciation, relating. material value (Taurus / 2nd house); or compromise, chess playing (alphabet Libra / 7th house)
- ✓ *Mars*: bravery, initiative, assertiveness, initiative (Aries / 1st house); or resourcefulness (alphabet Scorpio / 8th house)
- ✓ *Jupiter*: philosophy, growth, entrepreneurial aptitude, expansion (Sagittarius / 9th house); or inspiration, (Pisces / 12th house)
- ✓ *Saturn*: responsibility, authority, respect, judgment, conservation (Capricorn / 10th house); or scientific / political (Aquarius / 11th house)
- ✓ *Uranus*: catalyst, excitement, progressiveness, (Aquarius / 11th house)
- ✓ *Neptune*: spirituality, inspiration, imagination, possible sacrifice (Pisces / 12th house)
- ✓ *Pluto*: intensity, power, resourcefulness, control (Scorpio / 8th house)
- ✓ *MC*: achievement, reputation, stature (Saturn / Capricorn / 10th house)
- ✓ *IC*: roots, emotional security, family (Moon / Cancer / 4th house)
- ✓ *Dec*: partnership, conciliation, cooperation (Venus / Libra / 7th house)
- ✓ *Asc*: (not usual) personal support, encouragement, image booster

According to Delphine Jay, Mutual Receptions do work. I have not figured out how, as the Vertex or the Anti-Vertex do not specifically rule signs or houses in my world. My inability to comprehend does not invalidate her perception. Please reference her material. If you cannot access her work, turn to the planets ruling the signs (rulership) or houses (mundane rulership) of the Vertex or Anti-vertex to supply the Mutual Reception.

How to read My example reading sentence: The Vertex, a point of environmental or relational expectancy, is located in the sign of _____. The expectancy is _____. It is also located in the _____ house, the arena of experience for _____. It stems from the Anti-Vertex, the point of cause or setting in motion of the resultant expectancy at the Vertex. The Anti-Vertex is in the sign of _____, the manner in which the expectancy was created _____, in the _____ house of _____, the arena for the cause. It is in _____ aspect to a planet _____ that produces _____.

Synastry

Synastry is a comparison of charts between two (or more) individuals. You can place the Vertex / Anti-Vertex in composite or relationship charts as well. Significant karmic relationships may show a reciprocal Vertex contact between the charts because Vertex contacts create an expectancy between those involved. Use the planet or point material just presented natively as a tool for synastry between the charts, just remember to translate it as synastry. If the Vertex is conjunct a planet or point, the planet or point person's other chart(s) expects a specific expression by the Vertex person. Look first at the Anti-Vertex position to see what has been set in motion (cause), noting the effect at the Vertex in each chart.

Example: If your Sun is conjunct my Vertex, you expect me (the Vertex person) to validate your Sun (planet or point person). Apparently at some time in the past (Anti-Vertex), you (planet person) either validated me (Anti-Vertex person) and now I must return the favor, or perhaps I (Vertex person) invalidated you (planet person) in the past and must now correct that error. This is speculative. Play with the concept.

Activations are When The natal chart provides a diagram of zodiac degrees sensitive to the native. Activations by transit, progression or direction trigger or catalyze the natal sensitivities and we encounter the experiences promised in their many forms. Triggers to the natal Vertex occur in the same manner that the balance of the chart is activated. Therefore, the natal Vertex / Anti-Vertex can be activated by directions, progressions, transits and eclipses. As I mentioned earlier, the moving Vertex, if calculated, represents "now" in a reading. I, personally, have not done as much with this material as I have the natal. More research is needed.

Consider first the transits of the heavier, outer planets, with their repetitive and prolonged triggering of experience. A temporary progressed or directed Vertex / Anti-Vertex may be calculated and placed in your progressed charts, but just remember that it is a temporary position. Only the natal Vertex retains its essence, and all other moving positions are temporary in nature. The moving Vertex to progressed planets can trigger temporary needs according to the nature of the contact. An aspect including the Vertex that perfects itself through progression (progressed to natal) would pinpoint the year of strongest impact.

You could also include the Vertex in a solar, lunar or planetary return, or even in a diurnal chart, should you choose to do so. What is a rule in astrology should apply in a consistent way throughout your charting experience or it is not actually a rule. It is, instead, an interesting theory. Again, that's not part of my research.

Here is my keyword sentence: The Vertex, a point of environmental or relational expectancy, is currently located in the sign of _____. The temporary expectancy is _____. It is also located in the _____ house, the arena of experience for _____. It stems from the Anti-Vertex, the point of cause or setting in motion of the resultant expectancy at the Vertex. It is in the sign of _____, the manner in which the expectancy was created _____, in the _____ house of _____, the arena for the cause. It is in _____ aspect to a planet _____ which produces _____.

Vertex / Anti-Vertex material is still quite new and in the development stage, much of it theoretical. Know the difference between theory and an astrological rule. Almost every astrologer develops concepts based upon their available charts, personal skills and interpretation experiences. Such concepts are really theoretical in nature. Unless your concept can be replicated through many charts and by other astrologers, it must remain a theory. What may seem to work in a couple of charts under particular circumstances may not translate into an astrological rule applicable to a wide range of charts. This is particularly true for karmic charting, which is quite nebulous in nature. For example, we, as a species, are geographically and / or culturally diverse. What applies in one region or in one culture may not translate well to another.

Personal example for theory vs. rule: Driving back from a meeting out of town about thirty years ago, I saw a sign for psychic readings. Being a curious Gemini rising, I stopped. The readings were pretty much over, but a local astrologer was "holding court", so I sat in. She had a rapt audience, focused on her message. And then she said, "All people born with Mercury retrograde are dyslexic." Mistake! Astrology would be so simple IF such generic statements were true.

Mercury, with its 88-day orbit, goes retrograde 3 to 3 1/2 times per year (with overlaps between years), and there are 18 - 24 days per cycle. Using the median of 21 days x 3 to 3.5 times per year, that's about 75 days out of 365 – resulting in about 20% of the world's population being born dyslexic according to her theory. Too generic a statement! I have a daughter with Mercury retrograde. She is not now and never has been dyslexic. She really does have a different method of communication, but it is not dyslexia.

The speaker's rapt audience took it in as an astrological "rule", which it is not. Had she done serious research on a variety of charts (not just her own personal files), documented her findings, and had her findings verified by other astrologers using other charts, she might have found a new "rule". Additionally, to my knowledge, she was not a trained or practicing psychologist. She was not in a position to brand every Mercury retrograde as dyslexic. Had she said "many" or "most" rather than "all", or said "in my experience", her statement would stand on its own. Do not propagate junk theories. Do the research! This entire workbook is presented from my personal perspective and experience, but I do make sure to say just that. And I tell you when my research has limits.

Karmic Astrology is promulgated on theory. How do you prove or disprove such an intangible? There is either a sense of identification with the material or there is not. We are assessing such subtle levels of being, and the theories are our best attempt at the moment. There is a lot of material I have not encountered that can be added to your study of karmic astrology. If you encounter disagreement, give both sides a fair shot. Do not start with a rigid opinion or agenda, or you will skew your results. Anytime you approach research with preconceived notions, you doom your study and the work and effort you put into it because your work will attempt to justify your foregone conclusion. This is true of any research. You must be objective, thorough and fair, or your work will reflect such bias.

Additional reading:

- ✓ *Star Fields* by Michael Munkasey
- ✓ *The East Point and the Anti Vertex* by Maritha Pottenger
- ✓ Teaching material by Delphine Jay and other sources may not be in print. More resources may be available from past AFA bulletins.

Vertical line on the left side of the page.

The Rays of Soul and Personality

*Evolution vs. Creationism
Numbers, The Seven Rays
Light and Color, Gemstones
Musical / Astrological Equivalents*

There is so much material on the rays, with much conflicting information by highly esteemed authors, that it is difficult to know where to begin. I am going to start with logic (numbers) and wend my way through the labyrinth of abstract thought to show you my concept of the rays and their effects on our lives. As a disclaimer, please know that I do not pretend to have great knowledge about them. Because of the rays' influence on karma, it is important for this rudimentary presentation.

We have previously covered the overall characteristics of our study, our spiritual development, the law of cause and effect (karma), and the concepts of spirit, soul, and personality. To reiterate briefly...

Evolution vs. Creationism

Religion In the beginning (whenever that could be in a beginningless state) was God (which pre-existed the beginning), and God created (out of itself since nothing else existed), and the world (manifest creation) was without form and void (big bang theory? chaos?). The creative act was the Word. Was it a human word, a God word, sound, vibration, single, multiple?

Current *Christianity* believes that all of creation from "The Word" until now encompasses about 6000 years, and that all the archeological, geological, and astronomical evidence is just plain wrong. God went about the process of forming the cosmos, Earth, plants and animals, man to tend the garden and look after the animals, and woman as a companion to the man. "And God created" is the cry of creationism.

Hinduism sees creation in terms of millennia, with great world ages of understandable and predictable cycles of varying lengths. Our western form of astrology borrows from, but changes the format of, those world ages. And, of course, there are many other cosmological / philosophical systems.

Science Our scientists currently tell us that the cosmos is 13.82 billion years old. This is based on our ability to look towards such a beginning and estimate the elapsed time. We can only measure what is visible to us in some form, and the breadth, depth and age of the cosmos is continually expanding day-by-day as light from the beginning reaches us at the speed of light. Our scientists are doing the best they can with our limited human vision and continually changing data. Stay tuned for corrections. Our Sun was formed about 5 billion years ago, and Earth and other satellites of the Sun about 4.54 billion years ago. Creation spontaneously occurred, reason unknown, and “natural evolution” is the declaration of the scientist.

Astronomically, differential rotation explains that areas of our Milky Way Galaxy rotate at differing speeds; i.e., the center rotates faster than the outer spiral bands. Gravity waves and a secondary galactic disk located with the central bulge, tilted about 20° to the galactic plane, further affect our rotational speed. The diameter of the galactic disk is 100,000 light years and the central bulge is about 25,000 light years. From our Solar System position within our galaxy in the Orion Spur in the Sagittarius arm, about 27,000 light years from that center, our Sun with its entourage of planets traveling at 135 miles per second, takes about 230 million years to complete one clockwise revolution. [1] This would philosophically correspond to the concept of a great year or great age.

Where are we in all those possibly conflicting concepts? Born and raised Christian, I have a natural bent in that direction. After studying metaphysics for over fifty years, a subject which embraces all the world’s religions and philosophies, my thoughts have been reshaped. With the natural curiosity of Gemini rising about how things work and why life is, I have explored the hard sciences, which has also reshaped my thought, almost as much as the abstract philosophies. I am a pretty thorough mix by now. This course of karmic study is the current end result of my experience. Where are you in this ongoing search? Are you a creationist or an evolutionist? Perhaps you are somewhere in the middle with me. What is at the core of your belief system? Do not worry about labels or names – all of that is a function of language. Where are you personally coming from? Edit my work as you go, and re-read when possible.

I believe there is a creative source, beyond description and comprehension, and that it had a hand in our existence. To argue how much of a hand, and what and why, is beyond the scope of this course - but create it did! Inasmuch as I do not like my Source to be human (from what I see, I do not want to be governed by another human), the Word could have been thought, sound, or vibration, or something I cannot envision at the moment. The act of creation is what is important here, not what it sounded like. Whatever It was, *It* created something out of *Its* unmanifested allness, Its potential. It manifested from Itself (whether in whole or in part is unknown), and duality (reflection) came into existence.

Numbers If you start with the concept of allness (Source), numerologically it is the zero cypher which suggests the unmanifest, everything that can ever be, in potential. Zero is not a number, it is a place holder in mathematics. When you stir that particular pot of potential, the Source in motion, the vibration, which may be a sound, manifests. That is what we call creation itself.

That initiating act is the number one. Source dips into its potential. The manifestation itself (not the creative act), however chaotic, should be a mirror image of that potential within the Source. How can we describe the Source as chaotic? If you threw billions of sparks of yourself out into the universe, it would look like chaos until you recognized emerging organization. Combining the act of creation with availability of form creates the concept of duality, number two. Combining the spark of life (1) with form (2) creates everything else. The initial act between the fatherhood of initiating and the motherhood of form creates a magical child (3) and, eventually, all other numbers, experiences, and opportunities. The celestial parent(s?) in its / their union of all possibility gave rise to our reality. Creation itself is a defining moment but is also the product of the Source's effort.

Analogy A newborn first recognizes itself – I / me (1). It then realizes it has needs, creature comforts such as food, comfort, warmth, a diaper change (2). To accomplish its own ends, it learns to communicate, a whimper, a cry, a temper tantrum, somewhere along the line becoming aware of others (2) and the effects of a smile. It automatically knows self (1), learns otherness (2), and then learns to communicate with that otherness (3). This is an over-simplification, but it works.

Trinity So many of the world's religions contain the concept of threeness in relationship to their deities. Christianity preaches one God but specifically refers to the Holy Trinity of Father, Son and Holy Ghost or Spirit. Egyptian religion saw the trinity as Osiris, Isis and Horus. Hinduism centers around Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva. Other ancient myths teach of the Mother Goddess with her consort and child (fertility was paramount in those cultures), and there are other concepts.

The Rays The rays are numbered as an evolutionary process, so a study of numerology would aid you in your understanding of the rays. There is a wealth of philosophical material on the rays, some of which is carefully crafted to make it easy to understand such as the old Upper Triad material [2] that I originally studied. Other material is outrageously difficult (to me, that is the writings of Madame Blavatsky and, moderately less difficult, Alice Bailey). My suggestion is to start simple, stay logical, but give yourself an opportunity to experience various philosophical viewpoints. During your study, you will encounter the "esoteric" rulers of the planets that are different from the "exoteric" rulers we currently use. This is a deep study in itself that cannot be attempted in this workbook on karma.

Students and teachers of ray theory believe that we manifest through seven rays of soul and seven rays of personality, emanations of our original Source. Knowledge, inspiration, and purpose are continually being fed into our systems for our personal and global evolution. This continual feeding and inspiration are referred to as emanations. They "come down" to us through many layers and levels of manifestation. Some are so elevated that they never reach the physical plane. Others reach us through layers of experience and are modified by each of those layers.

The primary rays represent Spirit, Consciousness, and Form. As stepped-down transformers of the Allness, the first three rays in each category of soul and personality are primary rays of aspect. The last four rays are secondary, rays of attribute. On our human level, each ray is important in its own right and in its application to our lives. None are considered lesser or better, they just are.

The first three rays constitute the initial burst of creation previously discussed: impulse, womb, and manifestation (father, mother, and child or impulse, matrix, and fruit), and are considered primary, or causative. The four additional rays proceed from ray three, the prototype for the balance of the rays, and are combinations of the first manifested three: 1+2, 1+3,

2+3, 1+2+3. Since 1 and 2 lead to 3, why would 1+2 be used again? The first three rays stand alone as causative, again the rays of aspect. Having that as a basis for future development and experience, we then move on to rays four through seven, to a secondary layer of experience, beyond causation, known as the rays of attribute.

Step-down transformer Many years ago I, a long-time natural healer, experienced the physical need for surgery. I was not a happy healer. I did everything in my power, faith, and knowledge to heal the problem, but in the end, I had to have surgery. Day five of recovery was absolute misery. I doubted myself, I chastised my impotence, I was so frustrated. Somehow, I found myself in a state of reception for spiritual guidance – thank God! I was told by a disembodied voice (at least I did not see a body) why I had not been able to affect a healing and, additionally, why I was allowed to act as teacher and minister when I never felt qualified for either role. I will dwell on the answer to my role as teacher and minister for this lesson.

Instructed by the gentlest voice, I was told that the great spiritual leaders who had gone before had taught humanity lessons so profound and so broad that sometimes those lessons had to be broken down into simpler parts so humanity could hear and learn. Teachers and ministers like me acted as step-down transformers such as you find in the distribution of electricity. So much power is generated at the power plant, it must be gradually stepped down before it reaches the consumer or the power will overwhelm the consumer and not be useful, and possibly even destructive. People like me played a role in simplifying those magnificent original teachings to make them consumable and digestible for humanity. I was not over-reaching or over-estimating my spiritual development. Instead, I was a useful and willing tool for higher forces. It never told me how high, how good, or any other question we humans tend to wonder about. This voice simply told me that it was okay for me to do what I was doing. As you can imagine, I was stunned by the experience, despite the immediate physical agony, and definitely felt the surgery experience was worthwhile. I later learned of the shamanistic journey of the wounded healer and understood the experience even more deeply.

The secondary layer of rays act as step-down transformers for the lessons of the primaries on each level or plane. All are necessary and all are treated as equal. All have value in human experience and understanding. The originator of all is the Source. We experience continuous emanations from that Source, defined humanly by the rays of soul and personality.

As discussed previously, spirit is our highest personal form, the spark of God sent into existence at the moment of creation. Called the *monad*, it is that spark which is the mirror of the God potential. When we reach our destination which is our Source, that individual monad will be drawn back into complete union with its Source – *at-one-ment* (not atonement). As tiny specks of the consciousness that is the Universe, we would not have to “atone” for anything at that point as we are united in Source.

Since Spirit can only encounter perfection, it sends a thread of itself into experience, and allows a gathering of such experience at a mid-level collection point we call the Soul. Those experiences accumulate until the Soul reaches that Aha! moment when it is re-absorbed into Spirit. As we understand it, the experiences the Soul collects occur on the personality level. There may be other, non-physical venues. For guidance purposes, astrology offers clues as to why we are here, our strengths, weaknesses, and paths, to which we can add the ray material. Slowly but surely, we add layers to our meanings and seek to understand our personality experiences with a higher more evolved consciousness. At least that is the game plan.

Monad Ray The 1st Ray aspect in man represents God the Creator and is called the human Monad. The Monad always operates on one of the three primary rays. In a moment, I will suggest that you ask yourself a question. Do not treat this frivolously. Do not play with it in your mind. Bring yourself to a peaceful, meditative, open-minded state and then ask your question. Accept the first answer that comes. Logic or personal preference has nothing to do with the answer. You are asking a question of your Higher Self, that spark of God within you. Have the courtesy to both listen and accept. Your answer will tell you if your Monad is Ray 1, 2 or 3. This has little application to your personality in which we dwell and seek to understand, so this will be the limit of our discourse on the Monad. It is the higher principle, the “watcher” of our Soul and our personality. To find the ray of your Monad, ask yourself an inward question:

In times of greatest stress or need do I rely on:

- 1) power / will,
- 2) love / understanding,
- 3) mind / intellect

to bring about a result or to deal with the problem?

The Seven Rays The Soul and the personality can each manifest through seven rays. A basic understanding of the individual rays is necessary before we determine the individual personality and soul rays for this lifetime. On all levels of being, there is a pattern and change for each

succeeding experience so that eventually all qualities are experienced and developed. Lessons mastered are available in succeeding experiences. The quality of any ray is pure and positive, but it may be misapplied on this learning level. Therefore, I will show both sides of the coin of each ray: the lesson to be mastered and problems that may be encountered.

Each of the rays manifest a particular energy and each of the rays follow a principle of spiritual law. The rays describe the expression of Deity through form. According to Master Djwhal Khul (DK), the dominating ray for our solar system is Ray 2, and the dominating ray for our human kingdom is Ray 4. When a person is about 2/3rds through their evolutionary cycle, their Personality Ray will begin to be dominated by their Soul Ray. This is desirable. There is no higher or lower, there is only learning.

Odds and evens Occult Rays are 1, 3, 5, and 7. Mystical Rays are 2, 4, and 6.

Ray	Manifestation / Type of Force	Law
1	Power/ Will / Purpose	Synthesis / Vibration
2	Love / Wisdom	Cohesion
3	Active Creative Intelligence	Disintegration
4	Harmony through Conflict	Magnetic Dominion
5	Concrete Knowledge	Fixation
6	Idealism / Devotion	Love
7	Order / Ceremonial Magic	Sacrifice / Death

Ray 1 Keywords are causative, the Father, Shiva, Divine cause, will and plan. Ray 1 is not considered to be in manifestation at this time. The first root race (the first stage of human evolution) was called the Polarian. It was influenced by Ray 1, which will also influence the 7th root race to come. This is the Law of Synthesis and Vibration.

On the human level, Ray 1 of power / will / purpose represents action, initiation, electric and dynamic, assertion, leadership, self-reliance, and the beginning and ending of cycles of activity. Change is necessary, so outworn structures and concepts must give way or be eliminated to make room for new structures and concepts. As the causative spark of creation, this ray is so strong, it may be difficult for the personality to control it, manifesting negatively as selfishness, aggression, forceful, conquering, and destructive. The purpose of a physical experience is to provide the personality with the opportunity to master the lessons and evolve. Will you lose the battle to become a tyrant, dominating and contemptuous of others? Or will you win the battle to become a leader and a trail blazer, fearless and strong?

Ray 2 Keywords are causative, the Son, the Cosmic Christ, Vishnu, the Solar Logos, the Bodhisattva (World Teacher). The second root race was called the Hyperborean. Ray 2 influenced the 2nd and 4th root races and will influence the 6th root race to come. It is believed to be in manifestation since 1575 and will remain for 500 years. This is the ray for our solar system, The Law of Cohesion.

On the human level, Ray 2 of love / wisdom, represents union, cooperation, magnetism, cohesion, attraction, compassion, duality, the resolution of opposites, teaching and healing, and brotherhood and mysticism. As the ray of consciousness, it is responsible for guiding the development of consciousness. As humanity progresses, the second ray comes into prominence, helping the individuals transform themselves from personality-driven to soul-guided, to eventual reunion with the monad.

Negatively, Ray 2 manifests as indifference, desire-driven, blatant sentimentality, clingy, smothering, and neglectful. Will you lose the battle to become dependent, impractical, or needy? Or will you win the battle to become a healer, teacher, sensitive and psychic, with universal love and wisdom to guide you? Will you move through information into knowledge and eventually into wisdom?

Ray 3 Keywords are causative, the Holy Spirit, the Third Logos, Brahma, and the entire objective universe. This is the ray of our Planetary Logos and the ray on which the Mahachohan, the Lord of Civilization, operates. Ray 3 influenced the 3rd root race (Lemurian) and our present 5th root race (the Aryan). It is believed to be in manifestation since 1425 and will remain for 900 years. This is the Law of Economy and Disintegration.

On the human level, Ray 3 of active creative intelligence represents evolution, adaptability, creativity, intellect, philosophy, economics and adjudication. Ray 3 is the ray of evolution and differentiates into multiplicity, giving rise to the 4th through the 7th rays. At the end of experience, it will synthesize the knowledge of those rays. As the ray of the planetary logos, all contained within our planetary aura is qualified by this ray including the current Aryan root-race.

Negatively, Ray 3 manifests as criticism, cunning, inaccuracy, absentmindedness, and neglect. Will you lose the battle and become an intellectual snob, discriminatory, indecisive, and deceitful? Or will you win the battle to become a philosopher, scholar, and truth seeker with an ever-evolving consciousness?

Ray 4 This is a ray of attribute, the voice of the soul, and spiritual intuition. It is believed that Ray 4 is due to slowly begin its manifestation around 2025. Ray 4 influenced the 2nd root race (Hyperborean) and the 4th root race (Atlantean.) We on the Earth plane are generically affected by this ray. It is a primary mover in our experience and our evolution. Earth is a 4th Ray planet. It is the Law of Magnetic Dominion.

On the human level, Ray 4 of harmony through conflict represents the mystical balance between the first three primary rays and the last three rays of attribute. It is the pivot point of the seven rays. As such, it is called the ray of balance through struggle between all pairs of opposites, objective and subjective, personal and impersonal, etc. - duality.

Negatively, Ray 4 can be full of struggle and conflict, passionate yet with a lack of courage, exalted or in despair, reality vs. illusion, the extremes of the highs and lows of experience. Will you lose the battle and become dramatic, self-serving, conflicted, and worried? Or will you win the battle to become serene, balanced, beautiful, poised, and artistic?

Ray 5 This is a ray of attribute, the mental plane, the concrete, rational mind. It has been in manifestation since 1775 and influenced the third root race (Lemurian) and the current fifth root race (Aryan). It is the Law of Fixation.

On the human level, Ray 5 of concrete knowledge represents science, education, research, and objectivity. Ray 5 is the ray of the present fifth root race, Aryan, and plays a major role in the human evolution of objectivity. Every front has a back. The backside of the coin of objectivity is subjectivity. Objectivity without subjectivity lacks heart.

Negatively, Ray 5 can be critical, unsympathetic, demanding, and pedantic. Will you lose the battle and become narrow, arrogant, unforgiving, and prejudiced? Or will you win the battle and become mentally mastered, the scientist, the lawyer, or the alchemist?

Ray 6 is a ray of attribute, the astral plane, the plane of desire and emotion, the probationary path on which we all walk. It has been passing out of manifestation since 1625. It has influenced the second root race (Hyperborean) and fourth (Atlantean) and will influence the sixth root race to come. It is the Law of Love.

On the human level, Ray 6 of devotion and idealism represents religion, love, reverence, and truth. This will be the ray of root race six, next to come. It was manifesting in the Earth plane up to 1625 and is now out of manifestation.

Negatively, Ray 6 can be selfish and jealous, fanatical and glamorous. Will you lose the battle and become blindly devoted, excessively emotional, superstitious, and prejudicial? Or will you win the battle and become a friend, loyal, enthusiastic and inspirational?

Ray 7 This is a ray of attribute, and it demonstrates as the physical plane of crystallized energy, the reflection into matter of the first Ray of power. It influenced the first root race (Polarian) and will influence the seventh root race to come. It has been in manifestation since 1675. It is the Law of Sacrifice and Death.

On the human level, Ray 7 of ceremonial order represents ritual, law and order, organization, magic, sacred language and symbology. It has been in manifestation since 1675.

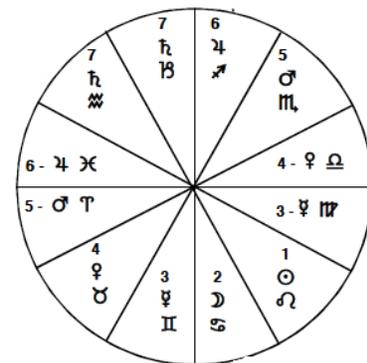
Negatively, Ray 7 can be politically motivated and regimented, with love of power and office, and full of pride. Will you lose the battle and become excessively formal, prideful, extravagant, regimented, and meticulously and mechanically ceremonial? Or will you win the battle and become the priest, magician, knight or political / business leader?

Instructions to determine your Soul Ray (primary) and your Personality Ray (secondary) are given in the chart located at the end of this lesson: "The Doctrine of the Rays in the Magic Square of Seven".

Astrologically, we understand the importance of the numbers seven and twelve. Seven spirits before the throne, or the seven visible planets: Sun through Saturn. The twelve signs of the zodiac are "ruled" by the seven visible planets. Since the four rays of attribute are governed by and emanate from primary causative ray three, we can use the old astrological rulership wheel to see the seven rays in astrological action. There is an entire system of esoteric rulerships to be pursued and studied with the rays, but that is far too involved to develop in this introductory lesson.

Light and Color

A brief examination of the properties of light will also aid your understanding of the division of the rays. “And God said, let there be light.” Obviously, God pre-existed light (consciousness), so the color of the unmanifest (unconscious) must be dark or black. The manifest proceeded out of the unmanifest or the existing potential. Consciousness proceeded out of unconsciousness. Light proceeded out of dark. Black conceals, white light reveals. While the properties of light range far beyond the physical into infra-red and ultraviolet and more, outside our personal physical ability to see with our eyes, we will confine our study to light as we consciously, visibly experience it. Bear in mind that anything which was hidden from our viewing or knowledge lived in our unconscious. Once it became known, visible by whatever means, it became conscious. Even though we cannot see infrared and ultraviolet with our physical eyes, we have mechanically unveiled it; therefore, it is now “technically visible” to us. That which was unconscious has been brought to consciousness and, therefore, we must learn to apply it consciously.



The light we physically experience comes from our Sun. We see it as white, blinding in its totality. We cannot look directly at the Sun or we destroy our vision. We must view it by reflection, by the play of light and shadow, or by separation into its parts. The light must be “stepped down” for our use. When you flash a beam of white light through a prism, the light divides itself into seven rainbow colors called refraction. Did you know that if you place a second prism to catch those seven colors, the refracted light reassembles itself back into white light? I actually saw this only once.

Reflection Did you also know that what we see as color is actually the only hue (shade) that is reflected back towards our eyes? The object or abstract absorbs all the other colors, and what it cannot absorb is reflected as a single color. Black absorbs all colors and reflects nothing back, which is why it should be played with very carefully in a metaphysical sense. How can black be intrinsically bad if it is the color of the unmanifest, potential condition of the Source? It is our human perspective, not necessarily “the truth”. This is an area of ignorance that we must study and learn but we currently do not “know”. Ignorance is never our friend. White contains all colors and reflects all colors, in whole or in part (read “visible and conscious”). The seven rays are patterned after the seven colors of the rainbow, or white light as refracted through a prism.

Back to Threeness Three of those colors are primary, and all other color is derived from combinations of the three primaries, called secondary, tertiary, etc., at later stages of combination. Colors may also be combined with white or black. If you combine white with black, you achieve varying shades of gray, a union of opposites.

The three primaries are red, blue, and yellow. If we combine red and yellow, we produce the secondary orange; yellow and blue produce secondary green; strong blue with red, secondary purple (indigo); strong red with blue, secondary violet.

Amazingly, the red end of the spectrum is considered weaker and the blue end stronger, even though in experience and, therefore, application, we see red as active and blue as passive. Remember the concept of absorption of color. We see red as reflected and all other colors have been absorbed. An analogy would be whether you see strength as physical effort (red) or endurance (blue).

I have extensively used color throughout my (currently) more than fifty-year study of metaphysics. I am a healer and use it for that purpose, as in aura and chakra work. I use color a great deal with gemstones and healing. Color is applicable with dreams and general symbology. How do you adapt the concept of color to astrology? I pondered this for some time as I was developing my workshops. I meditated, asked for guidance, read and researched. One day, I sat down in front of a blank blackboard, just stared at it and allowed all that internal dialogue to find an answer. The table below on Astrology, Color and the Rays was the first revelation.

The table “The Rays – Astrologically” took some physical action on my part. I invite you to repeat my process and watch the development of color – astrologically. Have fun! From my children’s toy box I retrieved a paint set, brush, water and plain white paper. Notice from the first table, the modes and their corresponding colors. It is simple to blend a quality (cardinal, fixed, mutable) with an element (fire, earth, air, water.) As you blend the colors, you blend the rays.

Starting with the primaries, make a patch of color on your paper to show the color in its purest form, the triplicity. Move on to the secondaries and blend two primaries on different patches to see the first layer of blending the septenary (seven). Move on to the tertiaries to see the next layer of blending and you end up with the zodiac (twelve). Note the relationship between the zodiac, the blends, and the rays implied as influence.

For clarity on our charts, I listed the color of the blends as I achieved them. How much you use of each color will determine the outcome. I tried to use equal proportions. The biggest surprise of the whole experience was Libra. I did the exercise several times and the answer repeated itself, so it is not in error. Be sure to do the exercise - hands-on is the best way to do it. My experience is not carved in stone and signed by God somewhere in the heavens or on earth. It is just my experience that I am sharing with you.

Polarities Three of the blends are polarities, colors opposite each other. For example, if you stare at a blue piece of paper for a few moments, then close your eyes, the shape of the paper will emerge in the blackness of your vision, but it will be orange. If you stare at red and then close your eyes, you will see green. If you stare at yellow, then close your eyes, you will see violet. Indigo does not have a specific polarity because it falls more into the blue category (orange is polarity). This is the general color information I use throughout my study and practice, and it may or may not be applicable to the ray study.

White White is all color before it is refracted or broken down into its component parts. This is the color of Spirit, unity, protection, and the Christ Consciousness. It is all before it becomes any one thing. While it is common to use white light in healing, I question that use. White can become a cocoon, isolating the individual rather than letting the healing flow through. Cleansing oneself from the natural personal debris of living is wise. White is excellent for protection, but the protective shield should be removed once it becomes unnecessary. Or a periodic personal cleansing with shields down is recommended, even when it is white light.

We will study the rainbow of color in order, but bear in mind that red, blue and yellow are primaries, and all others are secondaries. The red end of the spectrum energizes, the blue end of the spectrum sedates, and green is the mid-point (the balance).

Red This is pure physical energy, drive, vitality, primal energy, and enthusiasm.

Orange A combination of the red of raw energy and yellow of mind results in orange. Its keywords are ambition, organizing ability, and goal-oriented.

Yellow is mental, intellectual, stimulating, conversational, uplifting, and buoyant.

Green This is the center or pivot point of the rainbow, a combination of the blue of emotion and spirituality and yellow of intellect. Green represents healing, balance, growth, abundance and money. When in doubt as to which color to use, choose green for balance.

Blue is mellow, sedating, emotional, gentling, healing in nature, and the beginning of spirituality. Vivid electric blue is the color of Archangel Michael. This is the color I spontaneously used when I started healing work.

Purple (Indigo) is a combination of strong blue of emotion and mild red of the physical drive. It is deep, meditative, inner spirituality.

Violet is a combination of mild blue of emotion and strong red of the physical drive, which infuses more action into the spirituality. This is a working spirituality, dynamic and expressive. This is the Violet Flame, the process of transmutation, our desire and ability to transform or cleanse negative or mis-qualified energy.

Many shades, hues, or tones are combinations of these seven colors. The brighter and clearer the color, the purer the represented energy. Lighter shades convey lighter expressions and deeper shades convey intensity. Muddy or murky colors indicate problems with the energy represented by the color, such as muddy brown indicating negative materialism or greed. Muddy grays can be melancholic and / or depressive, blacks hostile and brutal, reds sensual or angry, etc.

Deep, rich, warm brown is earthy and practical.

Combining black with white gives gray, the union of opposites, shading matters.

Rich, bright grays (lavender or blue tones) are meditative or mystical.

Light pink is soft, personal, one-on-one love.

Deep rose pink is unconditional love or love on the universal scale.

Gold and silver are not actually colors, but iridescences or electrical shimmers on yellow and whites (and occasionally blues). Silver is often seen when the Christ Light is present. Gold or iridescent yellow represents God's wisdom. All information leads to knowledge, which through experience leads eventually to wisdom or God's light.

Black is the total absorption of all color, giving nothing in return. This is why it is considered to be negative by many metaphysicians. It is an energy that we usually leave alone when developing metaphysically, because we may not yet have the wisdom to handle it properly. Eventually, we will all return to it for it represents the primordial sea from which all emerged. Through our evolution and soul development, we will eventually face The Dweller on the Threshold of occult literature, facing the dark side of ourselves. A good movie to watch is the cartoon “*The Dark Crystal*”. The next to the last major scene portrays this initiation. This was a stunning revelation I had when I first saw the film.

Gemstones and The Rays

There are many sources of information on what gems belong to which signs. The jewelers have their own lists and do not seem to agree with other. Various astrological authors have still more lists that do not seem to agree. And the groups do not agree with each other either. Very confusing. It is not difficult to see some similarities between the gem and the ray or the gem and the astrological sign. In this segment, I will give you the material I have encountered on gem choices as applied to the rays and leave the rest of the argument for another lesson in yet another workbook.

Remain aware of the disagreement among authors. I know how I feel and use the colors and the gems in healing, in symbology, in my physical life. My home is filled with gemstones: raw, tumbled, sliced and faceted. Meditate with this section, check out your own knowledge, and use your own instincts. The material needs to feel comfortable to you. For example, your perception of red as well as your comfort zone is different from mine. That is okay. Meditate on a single ray and, if possible, hold stones that apply to that ray, one at a time. See if a stone is comfortable and what experience you obtain from various stones. It would be so easy if there were seven discrete energies, but each person’s experience of any energy will be unique. That is the intention of the Source - variety and individuality, not conformity. Trust your own experience.

As you grow in understanding, your applications may change. What was suitable at one stage of development may not be suitable as you progress. The Bible states, “When I was a child, I spoke as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child; but when I became a man I put away childish things” (I Cor 13:11). It was not wrong to believe as you did, it was just appropriate for that stage. If a child asks you about sex, you do not tell him everything in glorious ecstatic terms, you simply answer the question. More comes later. Earlier is simpler, and then we evolve into greater levels of understanding. What went before was necessary but may become expendable. Do not be afraid to move on.

The breastplate of the high priest Aaron had its application to the twelve (zodiac) tribes of Israel (Exodus 39:1-14). “They made the onyx stones enclosed and set in work of gold, engraved, as signets are engraved, with the names of the sons of Israel (6). And they made the breastplate (8)... and they set it in four rows of stones; the first row was a sardius, a topaz, and an emerald... (10) And the second row a carbuncle, a sapphire, and a jasper. (11) And the third row a jacinth, a carnelian, and an amethyst. (12) And the fourth row a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper; they were enclosed and set in the work of gold in their enclosings. And the stones were according to the names of the sons of Israel, twelve, according to their names, engraved like the engravings of signets, everyone with his name, according to the twelve tribes.” (14). [3]

Another interesting thing to note is the levels within the gemstones. Within the gemstone industry, gems are graded by hardness and by crystalline structure and clarity. Rarity enters into the equation in the marketplace as it relates to financial value and the intrinsic value of knowing that possession of a stone categorized as rare gives you brownie points on some level of ego. Sheer beauty, fantasy about the unobtainable, nostalgia, and many other elements go into the emotional value of a single gem, but may have nothing to do with market value.

Metaphysicians have a slightly different take. Go to a gem show and you can tell the metaphysicians from the rest of the crowd. The crowd is looking at the stones, but a metaphysician usually has their eyes closed and is feeling the stones’ energies. Yes, we are drawn by their beauty, but we are more drawn by their energy and a sense of belonging. Whether they are in their raw state, sliced and diced, tumbled or faceted, the energy of each stone shines through to those who pay attention. I have never done much with man-made or artificially dyed stones. You might like to compare their energy to natural stones for yourself.

Hardness Five gems are considered first tier by the gemstone industry. Those are diamond (the hardest), emerald, ruby, sapphire, and topaz. Ruby is the rarest (and I am not talking about wannabe rubies such as garnet and spinel, but natural rubies). When a jeweler is cutting and faceting gems, as you can image, eye fatigue is common. When the jeweler needs to rest their eyes, they stare into an emerald.

The rest of the gemstones are featured into other tiers of hardness, structure and clarity. This is a lesson about the rays. Think in tiers of energy and application. On the primary level is the Source, a oneness, unapproachable, which emanates itself as a trinity, still beyond approach, and then steps down the energy into approachable layers and levels (tiers) for application into the manifest universe, and eventually into Earth level and humanity. So much to investigate!

Not all gems are listed in our chart, just the few I have encountered in my study of rays. I have studied and worked with gems for over forty-five years. The industry is discovering, manufacturing, dyeing, promoting, and selling more stones every day. It is a financial marketplace and that's what financial marketplaces do. More recently, our extensive mining of precious stones has depleted aquamarines and they are now considered rare. We have uncovered new stones and faceting. The list has become endless. Study and develop your own associations. We are metaphysicians. In order to understand this plethora of gemstones, first do a rough sort by color, similarity, structure, and tier value - and then feel the energy to finish your sort. Be open to change and growth (see gem chart). As a mental stimulation, think of how the energy pattern or grid of the Earth itself must be changed by the constant mining, removal and dispersal of these gems. Is this a good idea?

Musical / Astrological Equivalents

Since I am not a musician, I claim no deep knowledge of music. I sing in the shower and at one time sang on stage, but I do not read music very well, nor do I play any instrument well, and I am willing to admit my inadequacies. Instead, my source is the Brotherhood of Light lessons. I have attempted to draw a piano keyboard to illustrate their findings. Since the key of middle C is a standard starting point, that octave (seven white keys - C to B) is the middle, the octave (seven keys C to B) below middle is low, and the octave (seven keys - C to B) above middle is high. Notice that an octave is seven white keys. The black keys are secondary representing either the flat or the sharp of the white keys on which they rest. What number is reached when you add the seven white keys to the five black keys of any octave? Twelve. While it does not specifically apply to the rays, note that the middle octave is ruled by the seven visible planets and can be related to the seven rays. See chart.

In addition, the lessons offered the English language equivalent of the Hebrew language on which the table is based. The letters of each alphabet are not identical in either number or translation. The Hebrew alphabet has 22 letters. The English alphabet has 26 letters. The Hebrew alphabet has

combination sounds not found in English. The Hebrew alphabet is ancient and the English alphabet is more modern. When the Hebrew alphabet evolved, seven planets were visible. What about the discoveries of Uranus, Neptune and Pluto? They are listed below the main keyboard chart in suggested application to music. Please research Brotherhood of Lights lessons for further information.

Deities A list of zodiacal and planetary deities is also given, taken from *Eclipses and Lunations in Astrology* by Sam Bartolet. I personally have not researched this.

- [1] *Voyage Through the Universe: Galaxies*, pages 60-61, Time Life Books
- [2] *The Seven Rays* by The Upper Triad Association
- [3] *The Holy Bible* by George Lamsa
- [4] *Eclipses and Lunations in Astrology* by Sam Bartolet

Hopefully, the material from this lesson will help you to understand the breadth of our life patterns and how so much of our activity rides on the wings of karma.

Suggested reading:

- ✓ The original Upper Triad Association material, if available. At one time, Upper Triad originated in Albuquerque, NM, but was later located in New Brunswick, NJ - several moves. <http://www.uppertriad.org/main.html> takes you to a huge website that indicates the major transformation that occurred in the organization in 1994. It has become a cooperative accessible through the website. The material offered is huge by comparison to what was available to me so many years ago.
- ✓ *The Time-Life Astronomy*
- ✓ *The Twelve Rays* by James Sturzaker
- ✓ *Healing and Regeneration Through Color* by Corinne Heline
- ✓ *The Doctrine of the Rays in the Magic Square of Seven* by Ralph Shelton
- ✓ Extensive ray material by Alice Bailey and Madame Blavatsky
- ✓ *Astrology of the Seven Rays* by James Davis and John Raifsnider
- ✓ *Ponder on This* by Djwhal Khul (D.K.) (Alice Bailey series)
- ✓ *Dictionary of the Sacred Language of all Scriptures and Myths* by G.A. Gaskell. (A brief of the material that can be mined from this book is provided (not specifically ray material, but corollary)
- ✓ The Brotherhood of Light lessons
- ✓ Myriad books on gemstones and crystals

Astrology, Color and the Rays					
Ray	Function		Mode	Color	
I	Will – Power	Primary Ray	Cardinal	Red	
II	Love – Wisdom		Fixed	Blue	
III	Intelligent Activity	Secondary Ray	Mutable	Yellow	
IV	Harmony through Conflict		I + II	Fire	Violet
V	Concrete Knowledge		I + III	Earth	Orange
VI	Devotion	II + III	Air	Green	
VII	Ceremonial Order	I + II + III	Water	Indigo	

The Rays – Astrologically												
Sign	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓
Ray	1/4	2/5	3/6	1/7	2/4	3/5	1/6	2/7	3/4	1/5	2/6	3/7
Color	Red Violet	Blue Orange	Yellow Green	Red Indigo	Blue Violet	Yellow Orange	Red Green	Blue Indigo	Yellow Violet	Red Orange	Blue Green	Yellow Indigo
	Same	Brown	Lime	Scarlet	Purple	Apricot	Black	Navy	Plum	Rust	Aqua	Sea Green
Color Polarity		Yes					Yes		Yes			

Note that the three signs which have color polarity form an astrological Yod (the Finger of God): Taurus / Libra / Sagittarius.

Gemstones and the Rays			
Ray	Gem	Color	Tiers
1	Diamond	White	Quartz Crystal
2	Sapphire	Blue	Lapis, Turquoise, Sodalite
3	Emerald	Green	Aquamarine, Jade, Malachite
4	Jasper	Mixed	Chalcedony, Agate, Serpentine
5	Topaz	Yellow	Citrine, Stealite
6	Ruby	Red	Toumaline, Gamet, Carnelian, Carbuncle, Thodonite, Thulite
7	Amethyst	Purple / Violet	Porphyry, Violan

Musical / Astrological Equivalents																						
Low					Middle					High												
C	D	E	F	G	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	A	B	C	
♌		♈		♎	♏	♍	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌
I / J / Y	⚙	Astral Chimes					C / K	ψ	Music of the Spheres					T	ψ	Harmony						
D		N		H CH	L	B	O	(English Equivalent / Hebrew Base)					M	Q	G	Sh Ts Tz	Th	Z	F P Ph			
							S	V U W	R	X	E	A										

The Doctrine of the Rays in the Magic Square of Seven

Courtesy of Ralph Shelton, Seattle, WA
As published in Mercury Hour, April 1981 edition.

Using the birthdate, reduce the month and year to a single digit through addition. Do not reduce day. Add day to reduced month and year. Do not reduce total. Look up total in table for Soul and Personality Rays.
Example: 10 / 31 / 1938
1 + 0 = 1 (month)
1 + 9 + 3 + 8 = 21 = 2 + 1 = 3 (year)
1 (month) + 31 (day) + 3 (year) = 35 (do not reduce)
From chart: 35 = Soul Ray 5, Personality Ray 2

Soul Ray

		I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII
Personality Ray	I Will or Power	32	47	13	28	36	2	17
	II Love – Wisdom	24	39	5	20	35	43	9
	III Activity, Adaptability, Intelligence	16	31	46	12	27	42	1
	IV Harmony, Beauty, Art, Unity	8	23	38	4	19	34	49
	V Concrete Knowledge, Science	7	15	30	45	11	26	41
	VI Abstract Idealism, Devotion	48	14	22	37	3	18	33
	VII Ceremonial Law, Magic	40	6	21	29	44	10	25

The Five Planes of Manifestation

from G.A. Gaskell's *Dictionary of the Sacred Language of all Scriptures and Myths*

The Absolute or Unconditioned. The Unmanifest God or God the Father

Plane 5	Celestial	The Manifest God or God the Son The Self, Higher Self, or Christ	Atma
Plane 4	Spiritual	The Wisdom Nature or Holy Spirit The Higher Emotion Nature or Madonna	Buddhi
Plane 3	Mental	The Higher Mind or Individuality The Power Mind or Personality	Manas
Plane 2	Astral	The Lower Emotional Nature. Lower Self The Desire Nature. Teleplasm	Kama
Plane 1	Physical	The Etheric Medium in all things The Solids, Liquids and Gases	Sthula

“These are divisions of the material nature of the universe, graded according to the rates of vibration of the atoms on each plane, the slowest rates being, of course, of the atoms on the physical plane, which is the external or lowest plane of all.” These [planes] range from the most outward below, to the most inward above. Behind or within, all physical things are the four other essential constituents, without which they could not exist, and from which they proceed.” The two highest planes are latent at the moment.

Additional notes:

Sun-realm	Light	Celestial
Sky-realm	Fire	Spiritual
Air-realm	Air	Mental
Water-realm	Water	Astral
Earth-realm	Earth	Physical

Deific names for the higher mind principle appear to be no more than one in any religious system: Thoth, Hermes, Mercury, Nebo, Thor, Hanuman, Shinatsu, and Tumatauenga. The Higher Self is sometimes symbolized by: Ram, Bull, Lion, White Elephant, White Goat and Fish, centers of Divine activity in the stages of manifestation (zodiac). Time, Space, Justice, Evolution, and Power sometimes have deific names; while Desire, Relativity, Limitation, Illusion, and Ignorance have demonic ones. The masculine relates to Spirit, mind, desire or time. The feminine relates to matter, intuition, emotion or space. The spiritual and earth planes are feminine, and the three other planes are masculine.

Planes, Five or Seven These are divisions of the material nature of the universe, graded according to the rates of vibration of the atoms on each plane. The slowest rates are, of course, of the atoms on the physical plane, which is the external or lowest plane of all. In the present cycle of life, only five planes are manifest or in activity. The two highest, to make up the seven, are latent.

Seven, Number This is a perfect number and signifies completion or consummation. It follows six, which stands for completeness of process. Applied chronologically, seven indicates the beginning and ending of a cycle – alpha and omega. What is holy: Swedenborg. $4+3 = 7$, $4 \times 3 = 12$.

Five, number This number appears in the Scriptures most often in two relations, namely the planes of manifestation and the senses. Symbols of the five planes are five elements, five worlds, five intercalary days and five gathas. Five brethren of Dives, five Karap brothers, five foolish

virgins, five companies of dead men, five barley loaves, five-pronged fork, are symbols of the five senses.” Five antediluvian emperors which are ruled by wood, fire, earth, metal, water, five human relations, five constant virtues, five ranks of nobility, five points (+center), five tastes, five colors, five viscera?

Planetary chain system Each physical globe has three counterpart globes of ascent and three of descent. They are on the three planes above the physical, i.e. two on the astral plane, two on the mental and two on the buddhic. Around this chain of globes the life-wave passes in seven rounds. The life-wave has passed through the seven rounds of the lunar manvantara, and 3 and 1/2 rounds of the terrene, and is now, therefore, on the fourth globe of the fourth round, which is the planet Earth on which humanity is at present developing. (Zoroastrian name, Secret Doctrine v I p 176)

The Five Planes in the World Systems

from G.A. Gaskell’s *Dictionary of the Sacred Language of all Scriptures and Myths*

(That list was horizontal, mine is vertical)

“In these tables the Five Planes of Existence are indicated by various symbols found in the religious systems of many nations. The correspondences show that all religions are essentially the same and refer to the same facts of being on the higher and lower planes. The polytheism of the ancients is obviously the same in principle as the monotheism of the moderns. The only dissimilarities lie in the great variety of symbols for the same ideas, and in the many allegorical statements conveying the sacred language in which ideas are expressed.

“The names between brackets are symbols of the Absolute or God-unmanifest, while the names on the highest of the five planes indicate God-manifest – the Higher Self. In some systems the same symbols denote occasionally God-unmanifest or God-manifest. The fourth plane counting from below, is the plane of the Holy Spirit, or Great Goddess, and feminine also is the lowest or physical plane. In most religions the highest plane is represented by numerous symbols or Sun-gods, the Sun being a universal symbol of the Higher Self traversing the life-cycle or zodiac.”

The Five Planes in the World Systems

Culture	God unmanifest	Planes <i>The two highest planes are latent at the moment.</i>				
		5	4	3	2	1
Greece	Zeus	Apollo	Hera	Hermes	Hades	Hestia
Rome	Jupiter	Bacchus	Juno	Mercury	Pluto	Vesta
Iran	Zerana Akerana	Ormazd	Armaiti	Tistrya	Ahriman	?
Scandinavia	Odin	Balder	Frigg	Thor	Loke	Sigyn
Chaldea	Ea	Marduke	Istar	Nebo	Enlil	?
Egypt	Ra	Osiris	Isis	Thoth	Set	Nephthys
Japan	Ameno	Ninigi	Ama-terasu	Shinatsu-hiko	Susa-no-wo	Haigi-no-kami
New Zealand	Rangi	Tangaroa	Rongo-matane	Tuma-tauenga	Tand-mahuta	Haumae-tiki-tiki
China	Heaven	Water	Fire	Metal	Wood	Earth
Christian	Father God	Son of God	Holy Ghost	Mental Faculties	Lower Emotion	Sensations
Kabbalah	Ain Soph	The Crown	World of Emanation	World of Creation	World of Formation	World of Action
Ottoman Sufi	The Unity	Absolutely Invisible	Relative Invisible	World of Man	World of Similitudes	Visible World
Indian	Paran-atma	Atma	Buddhi	Manas	Kama	Sthula
Greek	FatherAether	Good Mind	Fire	Air	Water	Earth
Mediaeval	Ineffable	Light	Fire	Mental	Astral	Physical
Boehme	Verbum Fiat	Light- breath	Fire-breath breath	Air- breath	Water	Earth
Swedenborg	The Infinite	Celestial	Spiritual	Rational	Proprium	Physical

Zodiacal and Planetary Deities
 from *Eclipses and Lunations in Astrology*
 by Sam Bartolet

Birthdays in the first 15° of a sign have a Zodiacal Spirit.
 Birthdays in the last 15° of a sign have a Planetary Angel.
Source unknown.

Sign	Planet Ruler	Degrees	Zodiacal Spirit	Degrees	Planetary Angel
<i>Aries</i>	Mars	0 to 15	Saratiel	16 to 30	Samael
<i>Taurus</i>	Venus	0 to 15	Araziel	16 to 30	Azrael
<i>Gemini</i>	Mercury	0 to 15	Saraiel	16 to 30	Raphael
<i>Cancer</i>	Moon	0 to 15	Phakiel	16 to 30	Gaphiel
<i>Leo</i>	Sun	0 to 15	Seratiel	16 to 30	Michael
<i>Virgo</i>	Mercury	0 to 15	Schaltiel	16 to 30	Raphael
<i>Libra</i>	Venus	0 to 15	Chadakiel	16 to 30	Azrael
<i>Scorpio</i>	Mars	0 to 15	Sartziel	16 to 30	Samael
<i>Sagittarius</i>	Jupiter	0 to 15	Saritiel	16 to 30	Zadkiel
<i>Capricorn</i>	Saturn	0 to 15	Samaquiel	16 to 30	Cassiel
<i>Aquarius</i>	Saturn	0 to 15	Zakaquiel	16 to 30	Cassiel
<i>Pisces</i>	Jupiter	0 to 15	Vicabiel	16 to 30	Zadkiel

Note: I feel strongly that the subject of the Rays needs to be included in this book, but do not feel that I am an expert in it. You will probably see at least several words or phrases that are unfamiliar to you, and I have intentionally not included much or any discussion of them here as that would take us too far afield of the main topic. Therefore, I would strongly encourage those of you who have interest, to pursue other sources to deepen your understanding of the Rays.

Inner Guide Meditation

Introduction to Meditation
Introduction to Inner Guide
Choice of Technique
Karmic Implications

Introduction to Meditation I will be your facilitator to introduce you to your internal guidance system. This method of meditation is based on the book *Inner Guide Meditation* by Edwin C. Steinbrecher. This process has helped me grow in many ways. Indeed, my copy of the book is dog-eared with use. At moments when the book was out of print or unavailable, my group facilitated many meditators based purely on what we understood of the process and our own personal experiences. Mr. Steinbrecher gave the world a wonderful instrument for growth and I honor his work. It is important that you obtain a copy of his book for full understanding as I can no more than scratch the surface with this introductory lesson.

I learned this process from an early edition of the book and follow that earlier edition as it is the most comfortable for me and the one I have used the most. Later editions may have changed some of the procedures. I will suggest you build your experience on whatever edition you have available as each is valid. This material is limited to an introductory procedure, and the book contains complete instructions. It is my understanding that the Steinbrecher foundation periodically schedules workshops to train facilitators. A Google search yields several applicable websites.

The use of a facilitator is optional, although in my case it was necessary. When left to its own devices, my mind tends to wander all over the landscape. Giving it specific instruction from an outside voice seems to help me keep my mind on track. I was introduced to this meditation in 1981 by Rev. Sandra Rigot Whelchel, and she facilitated my process over several years. We became good friends, made close by the personal nature of the exercise. She helped me enormously over the years and even though she is now in Spirit, I thank her posthumously for my growth through her loving help. This lesson material results from our work together.

I have learned, experienced, facilitated and taught many forms of meditation over the years. While the forms of meditation may vary, the aim or purpose of each is to reach an internal connectedness to our Higher Self, our “Source”, usually through relaxation and release of the physical

self and a quieting of the mind and emotions. First, we will spend a moment setting the stage physically, emotionally and mentally. Once that is established, we can get on to the purpose of this lesson.

Physical It is important to pay attention to our physical comfort, safety and well-being so we can then direct our attention away from our physicality. A comfortable recliner, couch or bed is the best location since you will be in this meditation for some time. It is best to not be exhausted as you will tend to go to sleep if you try any form of meditation. If you repeatedly go to sleep when you attempt to meditate, you can create a subconscious program that automatically puts you to sleep every time you try. Do not allow yourself to fall asleep three times in a row when meditating, or a difficult-to-dislodge sleep pattern can become a habit which you will have to work to dislodge.

You need to minimize interruptions. Eliminate disturbance by the phone - turn the ringer off, unplug it, put it on your answering device, turn the sound down or off, call forward, or have another person answer it out of range of your hearing. Arrange for a time when you will not be disturbed by others. I know this can be difficult to do. Put a sign on your door, “Do not knock or ring buzzer until _____” and give a safe time to do so. If other family members or people are around, ask them to respect your need for both privacy and quiet for an hour, or send everyone out on errands. Allow no interruptions for this specific process.

You also need to eliminate distractions. Warmth or cold will be emphasized in meditation. If you have an air conditioner or draft blowing directly on you, you may get very cold when in a meditative state. Use a light covering. If the air is warm and stagnant, you could get uncomfortable and trickling perspiration would distract you. If you have a window open, with naturally occurring street sounds, it will not only be distracting while meditating but could sound like dive-bombing by airplanes. A dripping faucet can sound like a cannon. A softly-playing radio sounds like a full orchestra playing in your room, directly in front of your ears. A chirping bird can sound like a vulture or eagle in full screaming attack mode. A cat or dog jumping on you will scare you half to death. A dog “woofing” in your ear will sound like a bull elephant stampede. I realize this sounds like a joke, but you will not think it’s funny if you are in meditation. It will pull you up and out of the meditation and you will have to begin all over again. By the way, what is the worst that can happen after you get your heart re-started? You will have to start the meditation all over again.

Do not cross your legs or arms, have them loose and comfortable. Crossing your legs or arms grounds your energy. This is perfectly acceptable if that is your intent, but that is not our intent in this meditation. I do not recommend lotus position or a kneeling bench because of the time involved in this meditation. Kneeling or crossing causes pressure points to form, and that eventually brings discomfort. Discomfort turns your attention back to your physical self and interferes with the meditation process. Should you get uncomfortable during the meditation, move! If you have to scratch your nose, do so. Do not dwell on your discomfort and decide you can “get by”, because you will not be meditating. It is better to do what you have to do to be immediately physically comfortable and eliminate any distraction, but please do not get up and move around unnecessarily! What is the worst result? You would have to begin again. Just do not allow this to become a habit.

Breath Deep rhythmic breathing is a wonderful way to still your mind and your emotions. Yoga practitioners have done this for years. The breath I prefer is a circle breath. A deep breath fills the entire lung all the way down to the stomach area and not just the upper part of our lungs. For the most part, we are very shallow breathers, filling only the upper parts of our lungs as we breathe normally. The lower lobes of the lungs tend to remain filled with un-exhaled carbon dioxide and other trace gases. Filling your lungs with oxygen-rich air and discharging the waste products of earlier breathing energizes us and contributes to our overall health and well-being. Shallow breathing contributes to a lack of energy, our feelings of exhaustion and our aging process. Conscious deep breathing is health-promoting, and, for our purposes, helps us harness the attention of our minds and aids relaxation.

We will use conscious, deep breaths, rhythmically. Your breathing rhythm is individual, so the count you will use will be individual. Let us practice for a moment. Close your eyes and turn your attention inward. Take one long, slow, deep breath, counting slowly in your head and note how long it takes to completely fill your lungs. This is your personal count. Do not force the breath past the point of comfort. There is no right or wrong count and this is not a contest. When you tense up to breathe past the point of personal comfort, you defeat the purpose of the deep breath. Once you have comfortably but fully inhaled, relax and allow the breath to flow out. Do not push the breath out, just *allow* the breath out.

Inhale As you inhale your next breath, think about the life-giving energy entering your lungs and body: prana, full of light, healing and protection. A simple thought of bright light itself is usually white at this stage and is sufficient. You do not need to think about color at this time, but at a later moment you could practice with different colored breaths to see their effects on you.

Exhale As you exhale, think about elimination of unnecessary or used-up energy. Tell your body to relax and let go of any stress or tension. Just give that over to the life force itself. It will know how to handle any negativity. The Universe wastes nothing: energy changes to matter or matter to energy. The discharge from one life form feeds lower life forms. Trust the process. Let go and let God.

Practice this inhale and exhale pattern several times. Determine a comfortable personal count for your inhale and the following exhale. Inhale and exhale to your personal count. Get familiar with the life-giving properties of the inhale and the internal elimination properties of the exhale.

Pause Once you have established this comfortable personal count,

- 1) hold your breath (pause) for the same count between the inhale and the exhale and also
- 2) from the exhale to the next inhale.

During the counted pause between the inhale and exhale, feel the life-giving energy of the inhale flowing throughout your body, cleansing and purifying. During the counted pause between the exhale and the next inhale, allow your body to equalize and balance out the energies that you have been moving around.

Inhale / pause / exhale / pause When you breathe in this manner (counted inhale, counted pause, counted exhale, counted pause), you form what is known as a circular breath. As you breathe, become aware of the circular fashion of your breath. This pattern of breathing calms your mind and soothes your process. This will energize, revitalize and relax you, quiet your mind and emotions and prepare you for meditation. As you develop this skill naturally, the need to count may be eliminated.

Emotional turmoil Should you be in especially strong emotional turmoil, which is unfortunately common in our society, there is one additional exercise you can incorporate into your breathing: color. When you breathe in, see or concentrate on the color green, as if you were drawing in that color with each breath. Pick a bright, solid green, such as a grassy field or the vibrant green as seen in a rainbow. Green is the color of healing and balance. Feel yourself filling with that healing green energy on each inhale. Feel that green breath flow over your body during the pause, cleansing and purifying. Feel that green breath sooth and relax your body, mind and emotions on your exhale as you let go of any stress or tension. Allow that green energy to help you balance on the pause between the exhale and the next inhale. When you exhale, allow what you have borrowed and used from the Universe to return to the Universe to be applied and used in other ways (the Universe wastes nothing). Later you can experiment with different colors one at a time. Pay attention to the effects on your life and well-being.

This is a simple, easy, fast way to relax yourself at any time. It may be used to still your mind, calm your emotions, relax stress or tension, energize your body and promote self-healing, or simply to re-teach yourself to breathe properly. It can be done in less than five minutes or can be enjoyed for longer periods as you choose. And now, back to our Inner Guide technique.

Introduction to Inner Guide

I have often been asked, “Why Inner Guide”, as contrasted to other types of guidance? I do not discount external guidance systems. As a matter of fact, I have personally experienced and teach those also. But they serve another purpose. I had channeled for years and have grown and developed tremendously as a result of my guides and teachers. I would not dishonor them or my learning process in any way. This method gave me great value.

Within One of the major metaphysical lessons we encounter is to develop the sense of our internal world. We live in a world that emphasizes separateness and duality. It is all too easy to put the blame or the credit on something “outside” of ourselves, whether that be God, or a savior, a guide, a channel, luck, the roll of the dice, etc. It is too easy to sell ourself short in terms of capability, capacity and spirituality. We can feel alienated from life, unworthy or incapable. We are driven spiritually by the desire to end the sense of separation and to be united with life. The purpose of a spiritual search is to integrate the self with that sacred presence, to reach for our God “within” and not “without”.

To reiterate: if nothingness existed and God created somethingness, then God must have created out of Itself. All that exists is in God because it is God, and that includes us. If God is all that exists, then there can be no thing that is not God, and no place where God is not present. God, therefore, is present here, where I am, inside me. God is also present where you are, within you. All that we have, all that we can or ever need to be is contained within us. What you are searching for, your quest to unite with the Infinite is what you are searching with – and the where of that is within. So it stands to reason that when we are seeking guidance, we should seek within.

As we seek within, we acknowledge the presence of the Life force within and we acknowledge ourselves in our various capacities. Normally, we project much of what we are or can be onto others, allowing them to act out those parts of us with which we are uncomfortable. Internally, we can encounter a number of inner personal images, which are archetypal symbols of these various parts of ourselves. We must remember they are not separate from us, but are truly a part of us. Each of the archetypes represent a function or facet of our own nature that may be latent, undeveloped, or perhaps dysfunctional or projected. By meeting our archetypes as images, embracing and working with those various facets within our own nature, we have the opportunity to bring each of those facets to consciousness. We learn what is necessary to surface the latent or undeveloped traits, to own and to heal the dysfunctional or projected facets, to recognize our developed and positive traits, and to develop all archetypes to their highest potential. We can consciously work towards healing, integration and creative self-expression.

A wonderful aspect of Inner Guide work is outer healing. As you encounter and work with this inner guidance system, your life can start to reflect the healing process. It seems as though your inner conflicts, once resolved, also resolve themselves in our outer experience. Your inner growth reflects in growth in relationships, maturity and self-expression. Your outer reality proves your inner experience.

All this is done with the aid of a Main Guide, the first we will develop in our internal world. Once established, this Main Guide will control the order and flow of the other various archetypal images in this internal world. The main guide assures that the process will be timely and not flow faster than we can personally handle the results. We should never (repeat: *never*) work in this internal world we are creating without the presence of

our Main Guide. This Main Guide is human. While it is common for your inner world images to be human, it is possible to encounter animal, symbolic or cartoonish images. One of my own images turned out to be a pair of boots that made a “sloshing” sound upon entering my inner landscape. Another was a blackboard with a piece of chalk. As you grow and heal in this inner place, the images can change form and expression.

Some of the images you encounter may evoke hesitation because they are unresolved issues within your own psyche. This is one of the reasons why your Main Guide is always in attendance. He will help you remain calm and in charge of that inner world. It is never necessary for you to remain in an uncomfortable situation. You can always refuse to participate, exit that internal scene, and return to that internal energy when you feel more capable of handling what arises. Discretion is the better part of valor in this internal world! Remember also, that if you make a promise, keep it. All that goes on here is a part of you. If you promise to return, do so. If you promise to take a specific action, do so. This is internal dialogue, so honor your word to yourself.

At this point, I want to emphasize that, while visualization (seeing) is definitely an easier form, it is not necessary to see to do the work. I personally have a self-created block to my visualization process and have still functioned successfully in this field of metaphysics for fifty years. Only occasionally do I see pictures or symbols. I call my own process a mentalization, which is a mental construct or comprehension, not exactly a picture. While I do not regularly see in pictures, I have successfully worked with my Inner Guide. Do not allow yourself to get hung up on whether or not you can see. You can still do the work. There are no mistakes, there are just different ways of learning and knowing. Know your process is individual and right for you.

Journal It will be important for you to journalize your visits to this inner landscape. This can be done in several ways.

- 1) You can have a facilitator as I did who serves not only as a verbal guide but who is also your scribe as you verbally relate your inner world and experiences.
- 2) You can open your own eyes occasionally to note names, important points, objects, locations, instructions, etc. by writing them down.
- 3) You can equip a tape recorder with a remote microphone that has an easy on/off switch that you can easily operate while in the meditation.
- 4) If you have an amazing memory, you can record your journal after you have finished meditation.

Just be thorough in your impressions and notes. Journalize continually as you progress through each step. Note questions and their answers. Note feelings, color, sound, gestures, looks, clothing, surroundings, and everything that can help you understand your experience once you have re-entered physical reality. We are working towards integration, not separateness. We are merely accessing another level or source of information; one we are not used to accessing. Take careful notes.

Progression Your mind follows an orderly pattern or progression to enter this internal world or landscape where you may meet and work with your guides. First it must go forward, then it must go left, and lastly it must go right. You will notice this procedure in the instructions. *DO NOT SKIP STEPS*. Should you lose sight of either your animal (to be described) or your Main Guide at any time, simply will yourself back to a prior successful scene and re-commence from there. *You* control the procedure. *You* initiate. *You* observe. *You* stay comfortable. *Retreat to regroup* can be part of this process. *You* leave when you choose. This is an inner world where all is controlled by your mind and where you encounter facets of that mind, layers or levels such as the subconscious. You are using your conscious mind (about 10%) to enter the subconscious and eventually super-conscious parts of your mind (90%).

Cave First you will enter a cave, allowing the cave to come into your consciousness, the cave forming itself. If you have claustrophobic feelings, enlarge the cave. It can be as large as you need - it is all in your mind. Just be sure you are in your body in this cave, and looking at the cave with your own eyes. Note all the sensory impressions you can: size, lighting, texture, smells, sights, colors, and sounds.

Left You will then move to your left, away from the point of entry of the cave. Find an internal opening that will lead you to a landscape. Move through the opening on your left into the landscape itself. Note all the sensory impressions as given previously. Get a full description of the scene, including weather, and close and distant impressions. Be sure you are in your body, looking at this landscape with your own eyes. Be brave and be present in the moment. This is a welcoming landscape. Experience the landscape as completely as possible from your personal viewpoint.

Animal While in the landscape, call for an animal to come to you. Do not try to program the animal or to mentally call for something familiar such as a personal pet (alive or deceased). Allow your inner world (subconscious) to produce an animal without your logical or nostalgic conscious help. Accept the first animal that approaches you. Take your

time, get acquainted and comfortable with the animal. You might play with it or pet it. Once comfortable, ask the animal to lead you off to your right, to your Main Guide, who awaits you. Follow the animal to this guide, who will be human and male, regardless of whether you are male or female. Male or female energy is neither better nor worse for this meditation, but it is a specific form of energy. You need male energy from this particular guide. Should the animal dawdle or not perform, give the animal “permission” to lead you directly to your Main Guide. All this is taking place within your own mind, which has habits and cautions. You have never paid much attention to it before, why should it believe you now? A little occasional coaxing is normal as you establish new parameters.

Main Guide Once you encounter *him* you should receive a wave of compassion, love and protection from this Main Guide. Observe and gather impressions of this guide: size, coloring, dress, circumstance. Do not be surprised if the face is not clear and distinct - this can be normal at this stage. Ask him, “Are you my true guide?” A false guide (which is possible) may say no, avoid the answer, appear as a god, or as a non-human entity or symbol, or perhaps as someone you personally know or is famous; it will exhibit no radiation of love, may vanish, etc. Once you have worked your way through such possibilities and the guide is still present, ask this guide to take your right hand in his left (or your left hand in his right if you are left-handed), and again gather impressions. That is what you are doing at this stage, gathering impressions, not giving your commitment. Oh, if we could only learn this in life!

Ask this guide to point out the Sun in the sky of this inner world. He should be able to do this easily and you should get a clear impression of the Sun. If you do not “see” it you should be able to “feel” the heat or the landscape should brighten. Pay attention to all impressions in this internal world. Take lots of notes.

Look to the right of that guide to see if there is any other person standing behind the guide, regardless of the distance. If so, move past the first guide, approach the second figure, and go through the same procedure as you did with the first guide. When you have reached your correct main guide, no other guide will be standing behind him. He will stand alone. He will radiate love. He will acknowledge who he is. He will usually be an unknown (to you) figure. He will point immediately, with delight, to the Sun.

Do not shortcut this step Your Main Guide wants you to be satisfied as to his credibility. He must earn your utmost trust. Once established, this Main Guide will facilitate all of your work. You will always call him first upon entering the landscape, and will have him present with all work you do in this inner kingdom. Take a few moments and develop a rapport with this most essential of all images. Does he have a name? Ask for an energy transfer. Allow your self to fully experience and enjoy his presence. Develop a personal relationship. This guide will always be with you in this internal landscape and will have guiding influence in all your experiences here. This image is important. Take your time.

Sun When this task is complete, ask your Main Guide to call down the Sun in human form, in front of you, immediately, and accept whatever presence comes to you. This is the representation of the life-giving, creative energy of the Higher Self. Ask the Sun figure to radiate as much of this energy, love and light as you can handle at that moment. Your capacity will increase with experience. Experience the Sun's energy fully. If you should encounter resistance (possible since all this is new to your consciousness, so hesitation may occur), ask the Sun to dissolve any blockage so that you may fully feel the exchange. Ask two questions (directly quoted):

- 1) "What do you need from me and from my life to work with me and be my friend?"

[First be willing to give in order to receive. Accept the first answer that arises, before your logic circuit (conscious mind) kicks into mind chatter. If it is a negative request (should not happen), or you receive an internal warning from your intuitive self (should not happen), refuse the requests until you receive a response with which you are comfortable. Where your animal, your Main Guide and your Sun are present, negativity cannot exist there. If you ever have any questions, back up to a previous comfortable level and start again. This is your internal landscape and *you* control the flow and the circumstance. This is a learning process, so there are many individual possibilities.]

Do not agree to perform unless you mean to honor your agreement. Ask your Main Guide's advice before accepting any answer. He is both your interpreter and your counselor. You must ask these internal image questions. They cannot judge you or others. They cannot volunteer predictions about you or others. They will not

invade another's privacy. If you are truly becoming spiritual, you will never invade another's privacy or take advantage of your skill. If you can and do, you are not on the spiritual path, despite what you have told yourself!

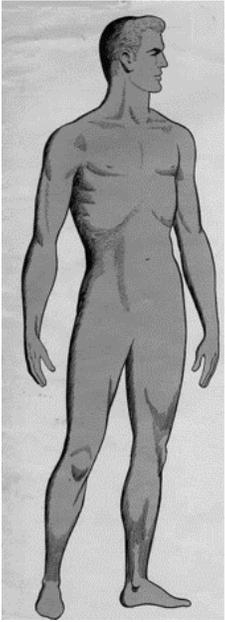
- 2) "What do you have to give me (in the form of a symbolic object placed into your hands) that I need from you?"

[Accept the first object given, clarify, define and develop your impressions. Then ask the image to "interpret what talent, ability or power is represented". If a tool, ask how to use it in your inner world, your outer world and your everyday life. Once understood, ask the image to place it in or on your body where you should absorb and carry it. Feel that placement. Ask why it was placed in that particular location. Ask questions of each image and your guide. Clarify before progressing. Practice with each tool. Be sure that tool works for you before moving on.]

If you wish, you may ask the image for a name or you may work with that energy as an image. Once satisfied that you have accomplished all that is possible with this image, ask your Main Guide if all is completed and in balance. It is necessary to balance out what you have both given and taken in this internal world as there is "no free lunch". Create an energy circle with your Main Guide to your right (always in this position), and the Sun to the right of your Main Guide (the Sun will automatically be on your left side of this circle of three). Allow a balancing of the energies to occur. Experience this deeply, in your own manner, and gather impressions. This is the manner in which you will encounter all the inner images. Your Sun may always be used to energize or to remove blockages as you work with your other internal images, always under the control of your Main Guide. Take lots of notes!

Healing Ask your main guide to call to you the images of the Sun and Uranus (astrologically) or the Sun and The Fool (tarot) images - whichever metaphoric system you are using. Ask the two images to combine their energies into one higher healing image. Ask your main guide to call this new image to you as Healer if any of your images (including the Sun or Uranus / The Fool), patterns or circles need healing. My initial Sun / Uranus image came through as a child's rocking horse, my inner healing

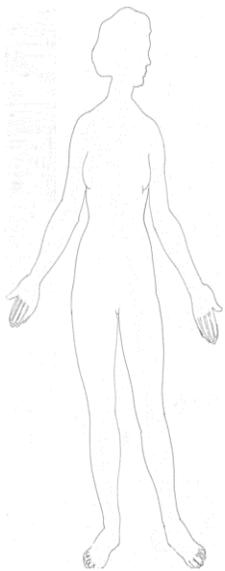
image. I healed with this rocking horse for three years and one day the image changed into Pegasus – apparently, I had grown up. The images can grow and change with you. If you have any questions, ask your Main Guide. Be sure to follow all the instructions as to impressions, two main questions and their responses, just as you did with the Main Guide and the Sun. Journalize everything you encounter. Your Main Guide, Sun and your Healer are your core group with the Main Guide always present and the Sun and Healer available on call.



Exit This will be enough for the initial visit to this internal world. Be sure to thank both your Sun and Healer for their presence, their abilities, the healing and energies that have taken place, and their protection. Ask your Main Guide to dismiss them. Thank your Main Guide and discuss any future contact. Ask him to balance out the energies you have experienced. Be grateful and courteous. Do not make promises you do not intend to keep. Honor your word. After all, the word you give is to an internal dimension of yourself. Acknowledge and “pet” your animal as a measure of respect and gratitude. Retrace your steps back through the landscape, the entry to the cave and the entry to the external world. Use this exit strategy each time you work in this internal world. Do the work, balance the energies, say thank you, do not make promises unless you plan to keep them, retrace your steps back to the external.

Future work Your Main Guide will introduce you to each of your individual images, depending upon which metaphorical or philosophic system you use. Unless you have a mind that does not wander, use a pattern such as an astrology chart or the Tarot Major Arcana for the framework. You will experience the energy of that image, determine what it needs from you and the gift it has for you, learn how to operate that gift, place it in or on your physical body, practice the gift, finish the work with that image, and balance the energy. Use your Sun’s energy to remove or dissolve any blocks in the energy of an image. Should you encounter an energy balancing with multiple images, always place your Main Guide to your right, the Sun to his right, the Healer energy to the Sun’s right, and all other images to the Healer’s right, circling back to your left side.

Make a future appointment with your Main Guide, which you must honor. Again, do not make promises you do not intend to keep! You are establishing a new relationship between your outer and your inner worlds, uniting them. Be respectful. Beware of ignorantly establishing a self-defeating habit that can complicate your use of this meditation. Use the exit strategy previously discussed. Journalize what you have learned and diagram on a sketch of a physical body (male or female as required) just where the gifts are placed in or on your body (see the sample diagrams).



If you need more room than the diagram allows, place your extra notes on the back of the diagram page, carefully noting to which image the notes belong.

Choice of Technique

The archetypes of this inner world may be worked astrologically as planets and signs, as tarot images from any deck, as Greek, Hindu, Egyptian, Norse, oriental or other god / goddess forms, as figures from American Indian lore, as familiar religious icons, as cartoon characters, as familiar objects (remember my chalkboard?), as the runes, as literally any symbolic system your subconscious chooses. I suggest that initially you work with a familiar system, such as astrology or tarot, and not just a group of unrelated images. Once you become aware of the Inner Guide and images for any one system, they are quite easily transposed to another system should you choose to do so. For example:

Astrologically Work first on the individual natal planet, sign, and house energies, and combinations thereof as previously mentioned. At a later time, work on your aspect patterns. You may find that you have an image for a specific aspect, such as a conjunction, square, etc. If so, do the usual workup to understand the nature of that aspect within you. Have your main guide call the elements of the aspect pattern to you, one at a time. As an example, Sun square Pluto is probably three images. These energies may be comfortable with each other or antagonistic. Proceed slowly and considerately, with the advice of your Main Guide, through an understanding of the aspect pattern itself. Form a circle for healing that contains your Main Guide, Sun, and Healer as well as images from the pattern itself. Work slowly - you are rummaging up a lot of psychological patterns. Give yourself time to develop and heal each step.

Once you have completed your natal patterns, and this will take some time and work, you could also work on your progressed or directed charts and aspects. The same is true of transits and eclipses. As an advanced technique, after practice as given, systematically work with your natal karmic chart and with your progressing karmic chart. Isn't it lovely to have a system that helps with our lessons and progress? You can do this with the Inner Guide meditation. If you have negative situations or events occurring in your life, ask your Main Guide to bring you those images or archetypes involved. Use the same two questions: (1) what that image needs from you, and (2) what gift it wishes to give to you that you are not currently accepting, the source of the conflict. Include the inner / outer uses and the training of the tool. Healing is used on a dysfunctional energy. Be sure to heal the energy of any tool before placing the tool in your body.

Tarot Start with the major arcana and work your way through the 22 primary principles. Initially, I would not work on the individual 56 minor cards, because to me they represent experience itself, and not necessarily principles of growth or development. Once you have completed the 22 majors, you might do layouts or spreads for specific areas you wish to examine such as relationships, business, or health. At that time you would work with images on specific minors and their relationship to past, present and future or influence.

Kabbalah While definitely suggested as a philosophical framework, I suggest you leave the Kabbalistic Tree of Life until you have had a little experience with the general system. I initially used the astrological system and later the Kabbalistic (Quabalistic) Tree of Life. The energies from the Tree of Life are amazingly potent. Prepare yourself through simpler systems before encountering them. I have, with the aid of my Inner Guide channeled a complete class in metaphysics and changed the form and content of many other classes that I taught. Much of their influence is found throughout many of my courses. I have worked Inner Guide with my animal totems and developed my own personal Medicine Shield. There are so many levels and potential processes that there may not be a limit or end to what is possible when using the Inner Guide Meditation.

As you grow and progress, your images may grow and progress with you, mirroring your evolving self. If you have questions, that is the function of the Main Guide. Do not hesitate to ask.

In recapping the initial steps, remember that I personally prefer a physical helper or facilitator. Be sure to journalize carefully and frequently.

- 1) Set your physical stage carefully so you can disengage physically.
- 2) Do a clearing process to enter the meditative state.
- 3) Enter your personal cave.
- 4) On your left, find an opening, and enter your personal landscape.
- 5) Call for your inner guide animal and establish a rapport.
- 6) Ask your animal to take you to your Main Guide who will always be male and will be to your right. Verify. Establish a rapport.
- 7) Ask your Main Guide to bring you the image of your Sun. Establish a rapport. Do the work. Do the circle of energy transfer and balance.

8) Ask your Main Guide to call your healing images (the Sun plus one other). Ask the two energies to merge into your Healing Guide. Establish a rapport. Do the work. Do the circle of energy transfer and balance. Ask for the tool to aid you in your growth and healing and include it in the healing before you place it in your body.

9) Thank those images and ask your main guide to dismiss them for the moment. Discuss any future plans with your Main guide and be sure to honor them. Thank your Main Guide. Internal hugs are allowed IF the guide allows it. This may take time or may never occur. It depends upon the guide and his function in your inner landscape.

10) Exit the landscape the way you came in. Re-enter your physicalness. Journalize. Reflect. Stand up slowly.

To recap the continuing steps (be careful to journalize carefully):

- 1) Set your physical stage.
- 2) Enter the meditative state.
- 3) Enter your cave and then landscape. Call your animal.
- 4) Call for your Main Guide (always to your right).
- 5) Discuss with your Main Guide what to work on. If you can, follow a systematic approach to adequately cover all the bases over time. Bring in your Sun to melt any resistance and your Healer as needed. It does not hurt to have them stand by just in case.
- 6) Stay simple at first, investigate and incorporate individual energies, one at a time by asking your Main Guide to call in those images. Establish a rapport, ask for your tool and its application in your life, do your healing and balancing circle, clear first and then install the tool in your body where indicated. Thank them and ask your Main Guide to dismiss them. Do as many of these in a meditation session as you and your Main Guide find comfortable.
- 7) Thank your Sun and Healer and ask your Main Guide to dismiss them when finished and to balance out the energies between him and you. Thank your Main Guide. Discuss future plans (honor them).
- 8) Use your exit strategy. Journalize. Note each tool on the appropriate body image. Note each tool on your worksheet.

Inner Guide Meditation can be a marvelous tool for self-examination and for exploring karmic issues and situations. Go slow, be thorough, and enjoy!

I have provided you with the forms I found useful to do this work. By all means, if still available, obtain the Steinbrecher book and facilitator or training.

Edward Charles Steinbrecher was an Astrologer, born Apr 4, 1920, 10:55 PM CST, Chicago, IL, USA, died Jan 26, 2002, 12:40 PM PST, Los Angeles, CA, USA. D.O.M.E. was founded Apr 5, 1973, Santa Fe, NM, USA. He was a major contributor to the Rodden astrological database

Inner Guide Meditation Worksheet										
Path	Astrology (10 planets + 12 signs)	Tarot (22 Majors)	Other	Form	Name	Lesson	Gift	Body	Inner Use	Outer Use
1	Sun	Sun								
2	Mercury	Magician								
3	Uranus	Fool								
4	Moon	High Priestess								
5	Venus	Empress								
6	Aries	Emperor								
7	Taurus	Hierophant								
8	Gemini	Lovers								
9	Cancer	Chariot								
10	Leo	Strength								
11	Virgo	Hermit								
12	Jupiter	Wheel/Fortune								
13	Libra	Justice								
14	Neptune	Hanged Man								
15	Scorpio	Death								
16	Sagittarius	Temperance								
17	Capricorn	Devil								
18	Mars	Tower								
19	Aquarius	Star								
20	Pisces	Moon								
21	Pluto	Last Judgement								
22	Saturn	World								

Learning Method #2: The Sorbonne Method

Method # 2: The Sorbonne Method of Reading and Learning as demonstrated in *The Art of Study (The Sorbonne Method)* by Edmond Bordeaux Szekely. The highlights of the method are:

- 1) Be selective as to your reading material. Since you will be spending more time with each book, pick only the very best sources. Be eclectic in your selection and read diverse topics with a cross-section of cultures, paying particular attention to masterpieces. Compile a list of the primary books you desire and revise the list as necessary. Society in general is on information overload - you want quality, not quantity.
- 2) Read through the entire text once including the preface, introduction, table of contents, jacket, etc. (to gain insight as to who the author is, why the book was written and the method used). Do not stop to comprehend each individual paragraph. You are reading to obtain an overview. Note any original ideas or insights as they occur. When you re-read the material, it is not possible to exactly re-experience the insight, or at times to even locate it (see note 7).
- 3) Create landmarks in the book, underline main concepts, separate different groups of ideas. Do not separate organic units – but definitely separate incompatible groups of ideas. You can also number each section in the margin to tie together separate pages, referring to the same idea by its number.
- 4) Use your creative imagination. Translate the words into feelings and / or pictures, parables, pageantry, or ritual. Think in pictures. Intellectual perception is insufficient. “Truth must elevate human reaction” (author unknown).
- 5) Translate concepts into your own language; note this along the right margin. Summarize and number according to respective text numbers. For quick reference, key the table of contents to the main themes in your marginal notes by subject number.

6) To develop your memory, note questions relating to the text along the left margin, and the answers to which in your summaries on the right. To test your memory, cover the text and summaries, and try to answer your own questions. Repeat the test as needed. Number questions to correlate with the text and summaries. Read your right margin notes again the same day, one week later, one month later, and one year later. You will create a lifetime memory.

7) As you are reading and studying, you may stimulate original thoughts or extensions of thought. Once passed, these insights are difficult to re-achieve. Summarize and retain these on the top margin, numbering according to the text. Develop those concepts. Become an author.

8) Make note of everything you do not understand on any page in the bottom margin (again numbering according to the text). Diagnose your own intellectual deficiencies or weaknesses.

9) Correct those deficiencies by looking them up in an encyclopedia or dictionary, or use other methods. Use a separate page if necessary, noting page number and text number. This is why I suggest that you use looseleaf paper.

10) File these notes for the future as intellectual pictures of your individual evolution. Occasionally check back on your own progress. Use the knowledge you have learned. Put it into action in your life.

Why don't you go back and practice this method on this course?

Further Study

All the material contained within my workbooks has developed from live classes and workshops. I had a vision, spiritual guidance, many years ago. I “saw” the format, realized I had about 250 of these lessons to write, and started writing. I had hoped to reach those people who do not have access to teachers, courses, or material (like me when I started); or those who had to be discreet in their participation; or those whose lives did not permit a rigid time commitment to personal studies. I hoped to become a live teacher and / or mentor as needed. This workbook version started as a correspondence course, but I realized it has a wider application. My original intention was to make tapes available. You may record your own tapes simply by reading the course material aloud.

Should you choose to participate in a student / teacher relationship, I have provided you with the means. Following is a set of key items designed to check your grasp of each lesson. Once you have studied your material, completed your notes, and made your index cards as necessary or as desired, do the homework. You may contact me through my website marilynmuir.net to arrange a personal appointment.* (**Additional fees required.*)

Karmic Astrology: Not for Sissies Additional Study

Lesson #1 Spirituality

- 1) Define your “take” on life and karma at this point in your journey.
- 2) Do you have any guiding phrases or thoughts?
- 3) Define Karma, Spirit, Soul, and Personality as you see them at this time.
- 4) What are your thoughts on the usefulness or application of Spiritual Astrology?

Lesson #2 Personal Karmic Chart

- 1) Construct your natal Karmic Chart. Briefly delineate it. Do you have a sense of identification?
- 2) Construct one other natal Karmic Chart. Briefly delineate it. Does that person identify with it?

Lesson #3 Progressing the Karmic Chart

- 1) Karmic Snapshots: Progress your personal karmic chart to five external events. Identification?
- 2) Karmic Snapshots: Progress one other karmic chart to two external events. Identification?

Lesson #4 Karmic Relationships

- 1) What relationships affect you? How do you affect (or infect) each other?
- 2) Define a Soul Mate. Define a Twin Soul. What have you encountered?
- 3) What methods are available for determining karmic relationships? Define them.
- 4) Produce an example of a karmic tie between your chart and another. Delineate briefly.

Lesson #5 Hierarchal Evolution

- 1) How do you see group karma? Discuss your insights.
- 2) Describe the Changing of the Ages and Precession of the Equinoxes.
- 3) Give your interpretation of the lessons of the Age of Aquarius. Timing?
- 4) Define the various methods of reading smaller segments of time.

Lesson #6 Retrogrades and Reincarnation

- 1) Describe the production of retrograde. What bodies retrograde, how often, and for how long?
- 2) What is stationing? What is refranation? How does it affect the chart karmically?
- 3) Delineate retrograde, stationary, and refranation as if you were reading a chart.
- 4) What is the difference between a natal retrograde and one produced or eliminated by progression?

Lesson #7 Nodal Axis / Nodal Barrier

- 1) Give your nodal positions by house, sign, aspect, mundane and karmic implications.
- 2) Do the same with your other example or my chart, using your personal interpretation.
- 3) Look at your node in your natal karmic chart. Delineate.
- 4) Do the same with your other example or my chart, using your personal interpretation.
- 5) Progressed nodes move very slowly. Their only activation is a perfected aspect, or a change of sign or houses. Progress your two charts to see if new info emerges in the progressed natal or progressed karmic charts.
- 6) Nodal barrier: How is it determined? Delineate. Hemisphere? Singleton? Clustering? Relational? Do you have a personal example at this point in your studies?

Lesson #8 Vertex

- 1) What is a great circle? Name and describe the five great circles.
- 2) What great circles intersect to produce:
 - ✓ the Midheaven,
 - ✓ the Ascendant,
 - ✓ Declination and Right Ascension, and
 - ✓ the Vertex?
- 3) What are:
 - ✓ your latitude of birth,
 - ✓ your Imum Coeli (4th house cusp),
 - ✓ your co-latitude,
 - ✓ your Vertex, and
 - ✓ your Anti-Vertex?
- 4) What house does your Vertex occupy? Your Anti-Vertex? Read both: your Anti-Vertex as causative and your Vertex as resultant by sign, house and aspect (conjunction or opposition if applicable).
- 5) Calculate, place and interpret, by sign and house only, the Vertex for a chart with a MC 1 Capricorn 27, Latitude 19N.
- 6) Synastry example: my chart is example #1, you have my coordinates and my Vertex. Compare your chart and mine relative to Vertex contacts between them. Find and note the aspects. Give a brief reading as to what you think those contacts represent.

Lesson #9 The Rays

- 1) Give a brief definition of how the rays work in general, and each ray specifically.
- 2) What are your rays? How do you see them working out in your life?
- 3) Play with colored paints similar to what I did for “hands on” learning. Meditate on the process and the results. Identification?
- 4) Meditate with various individual gems and use your personal chart as a guide. Identification?

Lesson #10 Inner Guide Meditation

(Initially, an external facilitator is suggested; follow-up is your personal preference.)

- 1) Practice, practice, practice. Journalize thoroughly.
- 2) Use a systematic approach. Start with natal chart or Tarot placements.
- 3) When complete, move to karmic and / or progressions, and then individual issues.
- 4) Employ alternate systems such as Tarot, Tree of Life, gemstones, and colors.

Vertical line on the left side of the page.

Bibliography

A Cosmic Doctrine, Hickey, Isabel, Fellowship House Bookshop

A Spiritual Approach to Astrology, Lofthus, Myrna, CRCS Publications

An Astrological Study of Psychological Complexes, Rudhyar, Dane, Shambhala; also *Astrological Timing*, Rudhyar, Dane

Astrology of the Seven Rays, Davis, James and Raifsnider, John, Infinity Books

Book of Retrogrades, McCormick, John, AFA

Brotherhood of Light Lessons, author(s) unknown, Brotherhood of Light

Combination of Stellar Influences, The, Ebertine, Reinhold, AFA

Dark Moon Lilith in Astrology, The, Goldstein-Jacobson, Ivy, self-published; also *Foundations of the Astrological Chart*

Dictionary of the Sacred Language of All Scriptures and Myths, Gaskell, G.A., McDevitt-Wilson's, Inc. 1924

Do You Have a Nodal Barrier in Your Chart?, Cummings, Connie, unknown magazine

Doctrine of the Rays in the Magic Square of Seven, Shelton, Ralph, unknown publisher

Dynamics of Aspect Analysis, Tierney, Bill, CRCS Publications

East Point and the Anti-Vertex, The, Pottenger, Maritha, CRCS Publications

Encyclopedia of Astrology, DeVore, Nicholas, Philosophical Library

Fixed Stars, Robeson, Vivian, Cecil Palmer, 1923, 1st edition

"*Galactic Astrology*" notes, Sedgewick, Philip

Great White Brotherhood, The, Prophet, Elizabeth C, Summit University Press

Harmonics, Addey, John, Cambridge Circle

Healing and Regeneration Through Color, Heline, Corinne, New Age Press

Holy Bible, The, Lamsa, George, A.J. Holman Co.

Psychodynamics of Inconjuncts, Epstein, Alan, Samuel Weisner, Inc

Inner Guide Meditation, Steinbrecher, Edwin C, Blue Feather Press

Interpreting Lilith and Lilith Ephemeris, Jay, Delphine, AFA

Karmic Astrology: Retrogrades and Reincarnation, Schulman, Martin, Samuel Weisner, Inc.; also Karmic Astrology: The Nodes

Meditations on the Signs of the Zodiac, Jocelyn, John, Rudolph Steiner Publications

Node Book, The, Dobyms, Zipporah, Tia Publications

Phenomenon of Man, The, De Chardin, Pier Teilhard, Perennial Library, Harper and Row

Ponder on This, Khul, Djwhal (D.K.), Lucius Trust (Alice Bailey Books)

Power of Myth, The, Campbell, Joseph, Perennial Library, Harper and Row; also Creative Mythology, The Hero With a Thousand Faces; Transformations of Myth Through Time, and more

Predictive Astrology, Sakoian, Frances and Acker, Louis, Harper and Row

Psychodynamics of Inconjuncts, Epstein, Alan, Samuel Weisner, Inc.

Retrograde Planets and Reincarnation, Yott, Donald C, Samuel Weisner, Inc

Seven Rays, The, no author listed, the Upper Triad Association

Spiral of Life (Houses and Signs), Jinni and Joanne, self-published

Spiritual Astrology, McCoy, Karen and Spiller, Jan, Simon & Schuster

Star Fields, Munkasey, Michael

Twelve Rays, The, Sturzaker, James, Thorson's

Voyage Through the Universe, Galaxies: no author given, Time Life Books

Books by: Blavatsky, Helena, Theosophical Society

In preparing this Bibliography I found a website with free books / courses online:

<http://www.openculture.com/2015/08/48-hours-of-joseph-campbell-lectures-free-online.html>